

# **USER'S GUIDE**

## **MegaRAID SAS Software**

**March 2009**



80-00156-01F

80-00156-01 Rev. F

---

This document contains proprietary information of LSI Corporation. The information contained herein is not to be used by or disclosed to third parties without the express written permission of an officer of LSI Corporation.

Document 80-00156-01 Rev. F (March 2009)

This document describes the LSI Corporation's MegaRAID Storage Manager software. This document will remain the official reference source for all revisions/releases of this product until rescinded by an update.

LSI Corporation reserves the right to make changes to any products herein at any time without notice. LSI does not assume any responsibility or liability arising out of the application or use of any product described herein, except as expressly agreed to in writing by LSI; nor does the purchase or use of a product from LSI convey a license under any patent rights, copyrights, trademark rights, or any other of the intellectual property rights of LSI or third parties.

Copyright © 2005-2009 by LSI Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### TRADEMARK ACKNOWLEDGMENT

LSI, the LSI logo design, iBBU, MegaRAID, and MegaRAID Storage Manager are trademarks or registered trademarks of LSI Corporation. Microsoft and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds. Intel and Pentium are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. SCO and SCO UnixWare are registered trademarks and OpenServer is a trademark of the SCO Group, Inc. This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (<http://www.apache.org>). All other brand and product names may be trademarks of their respective companies.

CD

**To receive product literature, visit us at <http://www.lsi.com>.**

**For a current list of our distributors, sales offices, and design resource centers, view our web page located at**

**<http://www.lsi.com/cm/ContactSearch.do?locale=EN>**

# Preface

---

This document explains how to use the MegaRAID Storage Manager™ software, WebBIOS, and Command Line Interface (CLI) utilities to configure, monitor, and maintain MegaRAID® Serial-attached SCSI (SAS) RAID controllers and the storage-related devices connected to them.

---

## Audience

This document assumes that you are familiar with SAS controllers and configuration utilities. The people who benefit from this book are network administrators who need to create storage configurations on LSI SAS controllers.

---

## Organization

This document has the following chapters and appendixes:

- [Chapter 1, “Overview,”](#) describes the SAS, Serial ATA (SATA) II, and Solid State Disk (SSD) technologies, configuration scenarios, and Technical Support information.
- [Chapter 2, “Introduction to RAID,”](#) describes RAID (Redundant Array of Independent Disks), RAID functions and benefits, RAID components, RAID levels, and configuration strategies. In addition, it defines the RAID availability concept, and offers tips for configuration planning.
- [Chapter 3, “WebBIOS Configuration Utility,”](#) explains how to use the pre-boot WebBIOS Configuration Utility to create and manage storage configurations.
- [Chapter 4, “MegaRAID Command Tool,”](#) explains how to use the MegaRAID Command Tool to create and manage storage

configurations. The MegaRAID Command Tool is a CLI application for SAS.

- [Chapter 5, “MegaRAID Storage Manager Overview and Installation,”](#) introduces the main features of MegaRAID Storage Manager software and explains how to install it.
- [Chapter 6, “MegaRAID Storage Manager Window and Menus,”](#) describes the layout of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window and lists the available menu options.
- [Chapter 7, “Configuration,”](#) describes how to use the MegaRAID Storage Manager software to configure or reconfigure storage devices, how to save configurations, and how to apply saved configurations to a controller.
- [Chapter 8, “Monitoring System Events and Storage Devices,”](#) explains how the MegaRAID Storage Manager software monitors the status of storage configurations and devices and displays information about them.
- [Chapter 9, “Maintaining and Managing Storage Configurations,”](#) describes the MegaRAID Storage Manager maintenance functions for virtual drives and other storage devices.
- [Appendix A, “Events and Messages,”](#) provides descriptions of the MegaRAID Storage Manager events.
- [Appendix B, “Glossary,”](#) contains definitions of storage-related terms.

---

## Conventions

**Note:** Notes contain supplementary information that can have an effect on system performance.

**Caution:** Cautions are notifications that an action has the potential to adversely affect equipment operation, system performance, or data integrity.

---

## Revision History

Document Number	Date Revision	Remarks
80-00156-01 Rev. F	March 2009	Updated the WebBIOS Configuration Utility, MegaRAID Storage Manager, and MegaCLI chapters.
80-00156-01 Rev. E	December 2008	Added the overview chapter. Updated the WebBIOS Configuration Utility, MegaRAID Storage Manager, and MegaCLI chapters.
80-00156-01 Rev. D	April 2008	Updated the RAID overview section. Updated the WebBIOS Configuration Utility and the MegaRAID Storage Manager. Updated the MegaCLI commands.
80-00156-01 Rev. C	July 2007 Version 2.1	Updated operating system support for MegaCLI.
80-00156-01 Rev. B	June 2007 Version 2.0	Updated the WebBIOS Configuration Utility and the MegaRAID Storage Manager. Updated the MegaCLI commands. Added the RAID introduction chapter.
80-00156-01 Rev. A	August 2006 Version 1.1	Corrected the procedure for creating RAID 10 and RAID 50 drive groups in the WebBIOS Configuration Utility.
DB15-000339-00	December 2005 Version 1.0	Initial release of this document.



# Contents

---

## Chapter 1 Overview

1.1	SAS Technology	1-1
1.2	Serial-attached SCSI Device Interface	1-3
1.3	Serial ATA II Features	1-3
1.4	Solid State Drive Features	1-4
1.4.1	Solid State Drive Guard	1-4
1.5	Dimmer Switch Feature	1-5
1.6	UEFI 2.0 Support	1-5
1.7	Configuration Scenarios	1-6
1.7.1	Valid Drive Mix Configurations with HDDs and SSDs	1-8
1.8	Technical Support	1-9

---

## Chapter 2 Introduction to RAID

2.1	RAID Description	2-1
2.2	RAID Benefits	2-1
2.3	RAID Functions	2-1
2.4	Components and Features	2-2
2.4.1	Physical Array	2-2
2.4.2	Virtual Drive	2-2
2.4.3	RAID Drive Group	2-3
2.4.4	Fault Tolerance	2-3
2.4.5	Consistency Check	2-5
2.4.6	Copyback	2-5
2.4.7	Background Initialization	2-6
2.4.8	Patrol Read	2-7
2.4.9	Disk Striping	2-7

2.4.10	Disk Mirroring	2-8
2.4.11	Parity	2-9
2.4.12	Disk Spanning	2-10
2.4.13	Hot Spares	2-11
2.4.14	Disk Rebuilds	2-13
2.4.15	Rebuild Rate	2-14
2.4.16	Hot Swap	2-14
2.4.17	Drive States	2-14
2.4.18	Virtual Drive States	2-15
2.4.19	Enclosure Management	2-16
2.5	RAID Levels	2-16
2.5.1	Summary of RAID Levels	2-16
2.5.2	Selecting a RAID Level	2-17
2.5.3	RAID 0	2-18
2.5.4	RAID 1	2-19
2.5.5	RAID 5	2-19
2.5.6	RAID 6	2-21
2.5.7	RAID 00	2-22
2.5.8	RAID 10	2-23
2.5.9	RAID 50	2-24
2.5.10	RAID 60	2-26
2.6	RAID Configuration Strategies	2-27
2.6.1	Maximizing Fault Tolerance	2-28
2.6.2	Maximizing Performance	2-29
2.6.3	Maximizing Storage Capacity	2-31
2.7	RAID Availability	2-32
2.7.1	RAID Availability Concept	2-32
2.8	Configuration Planning	2-33
2.8.1	Number of Drives	2-34
2.8.2	Drive Group Purpose	2-34

---

## Chapter 3

### WebBIOS Configuration Utility

3.1	Overview	3-1
3.2	Starting the WebBIOS CU	3-2
3.3	WebBIOS CU Main Screen Options	3-3
3.4	Creating a Storage Configuration	3-5



3.4.1	Selecting the Configuration with the Configuration Wizard	3-6
3.4.2	Using Automatic Configuration	3-8
3.4.3	Using Manual Configuration	3-9
3.5	Viewing and Changing Device Properties	3-58
3.5.1	Viewing and Changing Controller Properties	3-58
3.5.2	Viewing and Changing Virtual Drive Properties	3-63
3.5.3	Viewing Drive Properties	3-65
3.5.4	Viewing and Changing Battery Backup Unit Information	3-67
3.6	Viewing System Event Information	3-70
3.7	Managing Configurations	3-72
3.7.1	Running a Consistency Check	3-72
3.7.2	Deleting a Virtual Drive	3-73
3.7.3	Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration	3-73
3.7.4	Migrating the RAID Level of a Virtual Drive	3-77

---

## Chapter 4 MegaRAID Command Tool

4.1	Product Overview	4-2
4.2	Novell NetWare, SCO, Solaris, FreeBSD, and DOS Operating System Support	4-4
4.3	Command Line Abbreviations and Conventions	4-4
4.3.1	Abbreviations Used in the Command Line	4-4
4.3.2	Conventions	4-5
4.4	Controller Property-Related Options	4-6
4.4.1	Display Controller Properties	4-6
4.4.2	Display Number of Controllers Supported	4-7
4.4.3	Enable or Disable Automatic Rebuild	4-7
4.4.4	Flush Controller Cache	4-7
4.4.5	Set Controller Properties	4-8
4.4.6	Display Specified Controller Properties	4-9
4.4.7	Set Factory Defaults	4-10
4.4.8	Set SAS Address	4-10
4.4.9	Set Time and Date on Controller	4-10
4.4.10	Display Time and Date on Controller	4-10
4.5	Patrol Read-Related Controller Properties	4-11
4.5.1	Set Patrol Read Options	4-11

4.5.2	Set Patrol Read Delay Interval	4-11
4.6	BIOS-Related Properties	4-12
4.6.1	Set or Display Bootable Virtual Drive ID	4-12
4.6.2	Select BIOS Status Options	4-12
4.7	Battery Backup Unit-Related Properties	4-13
4.7.1	Display BBU Information	4-13
4.7.2	Display BBU Status Information	4-13
4.7.3	Display BBU Capacity	4-14
4.7.4	Display BBU Design Parameters	4-15
4.7.5	Display Current BBU Properties	4-15
4.7.6	Start BBU Learning Cycle	4-16
4.7.7	Place Battery in Low-Power Storage Mode	4-16
4.7.8	Set BBU Properties	4-16
4.8	Options for Displaying Logs Kept at Firmware Level	4-17
4.8.1	Event Log Management	4-17
4.8.2	Set BBU Terminal Logging	4-18
4.9	Configuration-Related Options	4-18
4.9.1	Create a RAID Drive Group from All Unconfigured Good Drives	4-18
4.9.2	Add RAID 0, 1, 5, or 6 Configuration	4-19
4.9.3	Add RAID 10, 50, or 60 Configuration	4-21
4.9.4	Clear the Existing Configuration	4-21
4.9.5	Save the Configuration on the Controller	4-22
4.9.6	Restore the Configuration Data from File	4-22
4.9.7	Manage Foreign Configuration Information	4-22
4.9.8	Delete Specified Virtual Drive(s)	4-23
4.9.9	Display the Free Space	4-23
4.10	Virtual Drive-Related Options	4-24
4.10.1	Display Virtual Drive Information	4-24
4.10.2	Change the Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters	4-24
4.10.3	Display the Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters	4-25
4.10.4	Manage Virtual Drives Initialization	4-25
4.10.5	Manage a Consistency Check	4-26
4.10.6	Manage a Background Initialization	4-26
4.10.7	Perform a Virtual Drive Reconstruction	4-27

4.10.8	Display Information about Virtual Drives and Drives	4-27
4.10.9	Display the Number of Virtual Drives	4-27
4.11	Drive-Related Options	4-28
4.11.1	Display Drive Information	4-28
4.11.2	Set the Drive State to Online	4-28
4.11.3	Set the Drive State to Offline	4-28
4.11.4	Change the Drive State to Unconfigured Good	4-29
4.11.5	Change Drive State	4-29
4.11.6	Manage a Drive Initialization	4-30
4.11.7	Rebuild a Drive	4-30
4.11.8	Locate the Drive(s) and Activate LED	4-31
4.11.9	Mark the Configured Drive as Missing	4-31
4.11.10	Display the Drives in Missing Status	4-31
4.11.11	Replace the Configured Drives and Start an Automatic Rebuild	4-31
4.11.12	Prepare the Unconfigured Drive for Removal	4-32
4.11.13	Display Total Number of Drives	4-32
4.11.14	Display List of Physical Devices	4-32
4.11.15	Download Firmware to the Physical Devices	4-33
4.12	Enclosure-Related Options	4-33
4.13	Flashing the Firmware	4-33
4.13.1	Flash the Firmware with the ROM File	4-33
4.13.2	Flash the Firmware in Mode 0 with the ROM File	4-34
4.14	SAS Topology	4-34
4.15	Diagnostic-Related Options	4-35
4.15.1	Start Controller Diagnostics	4-35
4.15.2	Start Battery Test	4-35
4.15.3	Start NVRAM Diagnostic	4-35
4.16	Miscellaneous Options	4-36
4.16.1	Display the MegaCLI Version	4-36
4.16.2	Display Help for MegaCLI	4-36

---

## Chapter 5

### MegaRAID Storage Manager Overview and Installation

5.1	Overview	5-1
5.1.1	Creating Storage Configurations	5-1
5.1.2	Monitoring Storage Devices	5-2

5.1.3	Maintaining Storage Configurations	5-2
5.2	Hardware and Software Requirements	5-2
5.3	Installation	5-3
5.3.1	Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software on Microsoft Windows	5-3
5.3.2	Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Linux	5-8
5.3.3	Linux Error Messages	5-9
5.4	MegaRAID Storage Manager Support and Installation on VMWare	5-10
5.4.1	Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager for VMWare Classic	5-10
5.4.2	Uninstalling MegaRAID Storage Manager for VMWare	5-10
5.4.3	MegaRAID Storage Manager Support on the VMWare ESX Operating System	5-11
5.5	Installing and Configuring a CIM Provider	5-19
5.5.1	Installing a CIM SAS Storage Provider on Linux	5-19
5.5.2	Installing a CIM SAS Storage Provider on Windows	5-21
5.6	Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent	5-21
5.6.1	Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent on Linux	5-22
5.6.2	Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent on Solaris	5-24
5.6.3	Installing an SNMP Agent on Windows	5-28
5.7	MegaRAID Storage Manager Support and Installation on Solaris 10U5 and U6 (Both x86 and x64)	5-29
5.7.1	Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Solaris 10	5-29
5.7.2	Uninstalling MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Solaris 10	5-30

---

## Chapter 6

### MegaRAID Storage Manager Window and Menu

6.1	Starting MegaRAID Storage Manager Software	6-1
6.2	MegaRAID Storage Manager Window	6-4
6.2.1	Physical/Logical View Panel	6-5

6.2.2	Properties/Operations/Graphical View Panel	6-6
6.2.3	Event Log Panel	6-8
6.2.4	Menu Bar	6-9

---

## Chapter 7 Configuration

7.1	Creating a New Storage Configuration	7-2
7.1.1	Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters	7-3
7.1.2	Using Auto Configuration	7-5
7.1.3	Using Guided Configuration	7-7
7.1.4	Using Manual Configuration: RAID 0	7-10
7.1.5	Using Manual Configuration: RAID 1	7-13
7.1.6	Using Manual Configuration: RAID 5	7-15
7.1.7	Using Manual Configuration: RAID 6	7-16
7.1.8	Using Manual Configuration: RAID 10	7-18
7.1.9	Using Manual Configuration: RAID 50	7-19
7.1.10	Using Manual Configuration: RAID 60	7-21
7.2	Adding Hot Spare Drives	7-22
7.3	Changing Adjustable Task Rates	7-24
7.4	Changing Power Settings	7-26
7.5	Changing Virtual Drive Properties	7-27
7.6	Changing a Virtual Drive Configuration	7-28
7.6.1	Adding a Drive to a Configuration	7-29
7.6.2	Removing a Drive from a Configuration	7-30
7.6.3	Changing the RAID Level of a Configuration	7-31
7.7	Deleting a Virtual Drive	7-31
7.8	Saving a Storage Configuration to Drive	7-32
7.9	Clearing a Storage Configuration from a Controller	7-32
7.10	Adding a Saved Storage Configuration	7-33

---

## Chapter 8 Monitoring System Events and Storage Devices

8.1	Monitoring System Events	8-1
8.2	Configuring Alert Notifications	8-3
8.2.1	Setting Alert Delivery Methods	8-5
8.2.2	Changing Alert Delivery Methods for Individual Events	8-6

8.2.3	Changing the Severity Level for Individual Events	8-7
8.2.4	Entering or Editing the Sender Email Address and SMTP Server	8-9
8.2.5	Authenticating a Server	8-10
8.2.6	Saving Backup Configurations	8-10
8.2.7	Loading Backup Configurations	8-10
8.2.8	Adding Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications	8-11
8.2.9	Testing Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications	8-12
8.2.10	Removing Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications	8-13
8.3	Monitoring Controllers	8-13
8.4	Monitoring Drives	8-15
8.5	Running a Patrol Read	8-16
8.6	Monitoring Virtual Drives	8-19
8.7	Monitoring Enclosures	8-21
8.8	Monitoring Battery Backup Units	8-22
8.8.1	Battery Learn Cycle	8-24
8.9	Monitoring Rebuilds and Other Processes	8-26

---

## Chapter 9

### Maintaining and Managing Storage Configurations

9.1	Initializing a Virtual Drive	9-1
9.2	Running a Consistency Check	9-2
9.3	Scanning for New Drives	9-3
9.4	Rebuilding a Drive	9-3
9.5	Making a Drive Offline or Missing	9-4
9.6	Upgrading the Firmware	9-5

---

## Appendix A

### Events and Messages

---

## Appendix B

### Glossary

---

## Customer Feedback

---

## Figures

1.1	Example of an LSI SAS Direct-Connect Application	1-7
1.2	Example of an LSI SAS RAID Controller Configured with an LSISASx12 Expander	1-7
2.1	Example of Disk Striping (RAID 0)	2-7
2.2	Example of Disk Mirroring (RAID 1)	2-8
2.3	Example of Distributed Parity (RAID 5)	2-9
2.4	Example of Disk Spanning	2-10
2.5	RAID 0 Drive Group Example with Two Drives	2-18
2.6	RAID 1 Drive Group	2-19
2.7	RAID 5 Drive Group with Six Drives	2-20
2.8	Example of Distributed Parity across Two Blocks in a Stripe (RAID 6)	2-22
2.9	RAID 00 Drive Group Example with Two Drives	2-23
2.10	RAID 10 Level Virtual Drive	2-24
2.11	RAID 50 Level Virtual Drive	2-25
2.12	RAID 60 Level Virtual Drive	2-27
3.1	WebBIOS CU Main Screen	3-3
3.2	WebBIOS Configuration Wizard Screen	3-6
3.3	WebBIOS Configuration Method Screen	3-7
3.4	WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen	3-10
3.5	WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen	3-11
3.6	RAID 0 Configuration Preview	3-14
3.7	WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen	3-15
3.8	WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen	3-16
3.9	RAID 1 Configuration Preview	3-19
3.10	WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen	3-20
3.11	WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen	3-21
3.12	RAID 5 Configuration Preview	3-24
3.13	WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen	3-26
3.14	WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen	3-27
3.15	RAID 6 Configuration Preview	3-30
3.16	WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen	3-32
3.17	WebBIOS Span Definition Screen	3-33
3.18	WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen	3-34
3.19	RAID 00 Configuration Preview	3-37
3.20	WebBIOS Drive Group Definition Screen	3-39

3.21	WebBIOS Span Definition Screen	3-40
3.22	WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen	3-41
3.23	RAID 10 Configuration Preview	3-44
3.24	WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen	3-46
3.25	WebBIOS Span Definition Screen	3-47
3.26	WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen	3-48
3.27	RAID 50 Configuration Preview	3-51
3.28	WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen	3-53
3.29	WebBIOS Span Definition Screen	3-54
3.30	WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen	3-55
3.31	RAID 60 Configuration Preview	3-58
3.32	First Controller Properties Screen	3-59
3.33	Second Controller Properties Screen	3-60
3.34	Third Controller Properties Screen	3-61
3.35	Virtual Drive Screen	3-64
3.36	Physical Drive Screen	3-66
3.37	First Controller Properties Screen	3-68
3.38	Second Controller Properties Screen	3-68
3.39	Battery Module Screen	3-69
3.40	Event Information Screen	3-71
3.41	Foreign Configuration Import Screen	3-74
3.42	Foreign Configuration Preview Screen	3-75
5.1	Customer Information Screen	5-4
5.2	Setup Type Screen	5-5
5.3	Setup Type Screen	5-6
5.4	Custom Setup Screen	5-7
5.5	Server Screen	5-8
6.1	Select Server Window	6-2
6.2	Server Login Window	6-3
6.3	Main MegaRAID Storage Manager Window	6-4
6.4	Operations Tab	6-7
6.5	Graphical View Tab	6-8
7.1	First Configuration Wizard Screen	7-2
7.2	Auto Configuration Screen	7-6
7.3	First Guided Configuration Screen	7-8
7.4	Second Guided Configuration Screen	7-9
7.5	First Manual Configuration Screen	7-10
7.6	Manual Configuration – Defining a Virtual Drive	7-12



7.7	Creating a Global Hot Spare	7-23
7.8	Set Adjustable Task Rates	7-25
7.9	Set Virtual Drive Properties	7-27
7.10	Reconstruction Wizard	7-29
8.1	Event Information Window	8-2
8.2	Alert Notification Configuration Menu	8-3
8.3	Alerts Notification Configuration Screen	8-4
8.4	Alert Notification Delivery Methods Dialog Box	8-6
8.5	Change Individual Events Dialog Box	8-7
8.6	Change Individual Events Severity Level Menu	8-8
8.7	Mail Server Options	8-9
8.8	Email Settings	8-12
8.9	Controller Information	8-14
8.10	Drive Information	8-15
8.11	Patrol Read Configuration	8-17
8.12	Virtual Drive Properties	8-20
8.13	Enclosure Information – Graphical View	8-22
8.14	Battery Backup Unit Information	8-23
8.15	Battery Backup Unit Operations	8-25
8.16	Group Show Progress Window	8-26



---

## Tables

1.1	Valid Drive Mix Configurations	1-8
2.1	Types of Parity	2-9
2.2	Spanning for RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60	2-11
2.3	Drive States	2-14
2.4	Virtual Drive States	2-15
2.5	RAID 0 Overview	2-18
2.6	RAID 1 Overview	2-19
2.7	RAID 5 Overview	2-20
2.8	RAID 6 Overview	2-21
2.9	RAID 00 Overview	2-22
2.10	RAID 10 Overview	2-24
2.11	RAID 50 Overview	2-25
2.12	RAID 60 Overview	2-26
2.13	RAID Levels and Fault Tolerance	2-28
2.14	RAID Levels and Performance	2-30
2.15	RAID Levels and Capacity	2-31
2.16	Factors to Consider for Drive Group Configuration	2-35
3.1	WebBIOS CU Toolbar Icons	3-4
3.2	Controller Properties Menu Options	3-61
3.3	Additional Drives Required for RAID-Level Migration	3-78
4.1	Command Line Abbreviations	4-5
4.2	Conventions	4-5
4.3	Controller Parameters	4-6
4.4	Number of Controllers Supported	4-7
4.5	Enable or Disable Automatic Rebuild	4-7
4.6	Cache Flush on Selected Controller	4-7
4.7	Set Controller Properties	4-8
4.8	Display Specified Controller Properties	4-9
4.9	Set Factory Defaults	4-10
4.10	Set SAS Address on Controller	4-10
4.11	Set Time and Date on Controller	4-10
4.12	Display Time and Date on Controller	4-10
4.13	Set Patrol Read Options	4-11
4.14	Set Patrol Read Delay Interval	4-12
4.15	Bootable Virtual Drive ID	4-12
4.16	Options for BIOS Status	4-12

4.17	Display BBU Information	4-13
4.18	Display BBU Status Information	4-13
4.19	Display BBU Capacity Information	4-15
4.20	Display BBU Design Parameters	4-15
4.21	Display Current BBU Properties	4-16
4.22	Start BBU Learning Cycle	4-16
4.23	Place Battery in Low-Power Storage Mode	4-16
4.24	Set BBU Properties	4-17
4.25	Event Log Management	4-17
4.26	Set BBU Terminal Logging	4-18
4.27	Create a Drive Group from All of the Unconfigured Drives	4-19
4.28	Add RAID 0, 1, 5, or 6 Configuration	4-20
4.29	Add RAID 10, 50, or 60 Configuration	4-21
4.30	Clear Existing Configuration	4-21
4.31	Save Configuration on the Controller	4-22
4.32	Restore Configuration Data from File	4-22
4.33	Manage Foreign Configuration Information	4-23
4.34	Delete Specified Virtual Drives	4-23
4.35	Display Free Space	4-23
4.36	Display Virtual Drive Information	4-24
4.37	Change Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters	4-24
4.38	Display Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters	4-25
4.39	Manage Virtual Drive Initialization	4-25
4.40	Manage Consistency Check	4-26
4.41	Manage Background Initialization	4-26
4.42	Virtual Drive Reconstruction	4-27
4.43	Display Virtual Drive and Drive Information	4-27
4.44	Display Number of Virtual Drives	4-27
4.45	Display Drive Information	4-28
4.46	Set Drive State to Online	4-28
4.47	Set Drive State to Offline	4-29
4.48	Change Drive State to Unconfigured Good	4-29
4.49	Change Drive State	4-29
4.50	Drive Initialization	4-30
4.51	Rebuild a Drive	4-30
4.52	Locate Drive and Activate LED	4-31
4.53	Mark Configured Drive as Missing	4-31
4.54	Display Drives in Missing Status	4-31

4.55	Replace Configured Drive(s) and Start Automatic Rebuild	4-31
4.56	Prepare Unconfigured Drive(s) for Removal	4-32
4.57	Display Number of Drives Attached to an Controller	4-32
4.58	Display List of Physical Devices Attached to Controller(s)	4-32
4.59	Download Firmware to the Physical Devices	4-33
4.60	Display Enclosure Information	4-33
4.61	Flash Firmware with ROM File	4-33
4.62	Flash Firmware in Mode 0 with ROM File	4-34
4.63	Display PHY Connection Information	4-35
4.64	Start Diagnostics Setting	4-35
4.65	Start Battery Test	4-35
4.66	Start NVRAM Diagnostic	4-36
4.67	Display MegaCLI Version	4-36
4.68	Display Help for MegaCLI	4-36
8.1	Event Severity Levels	8-2
A.1	Event Error Levels	A-1
A.2	Event Messages	A-2



# Chapter 1

## Overview

---

This guide documents the utilities used to configure, monitor, and maintain MegaRAID® Serial-attached SCSI (SAS) RAID controllers with RAID control capabilities and the storage-related devices connected to them. This guide explains how to use the MegaRAID Storage Manager™ software, WebBIOS, and Command Line Interface (CLI). In addition, it documents SAS technology, Serial ATA (SATA) technology, Solid State Disk (SSD) technology, configuration scenarios, and drive types.

This chapter consists of the following sections:

- [Section 1.1, “SAS Technology”](#)
- [Section 1.2, “Serial-attached SCSI Device Interface”](#)
- [Section 1.3, “Serial ATA II Features”](#)
- [Section 1.4, “Solid State Drive Features”](#)
- [Section 1.5, “Dimmer Switch Feature”](#)
- [Section 1.7, “Configuration Scenarios”](#)
- [Section 1.8, “Technical Support”](#)

---

## 1.1 SAS Technology

The MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers are high-performance intelligent PCI Express-to-SCSI/Serial ATA II controllers with RAID control capabilities. MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers provide reliability, high performance, and fault-tolerant disk subsystem management. They are an ideal RAID solution for the internal storage of workgroup, departmental, and enterprise systems. MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers offer a cost-effective way to implement RAID in a server.

SAS technology brings a wealth of options and flexibility with the use of SAS devices, Serial ATA (SATA) II devices, and SSD devices within the same storage infrastructure. These devices bring individual characteristics that make each one a more suitable choice depending on your storage needs. MegaRAID gives you the flexibility to combine these two similar technologies on the same controller, within the same enclosure, and in the same virtual drive.

Note: LSI recommends that you carefully assess any decision to mix SAS drives and SATA drives within the same *virtual drives*. Although you can mix drives, LSI strongly discourages the practice. This recommendation applies to both HDDs and SSDs.

The MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers are based on the LSI first-to-market SAS IC technology and proven MegaRAID technology. As second-generation PCI Express RAID controllers, the MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers address the growing demand for increased data throughput and scalability requirements across midrange and enterprise-class server platforms. LSI offers a family of MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers addressing the needs for both internal and external solutions.

The SAS controllers support the ANSI *Serial Attached SCSI standard, version 1.1*. In addition, the controller supports the SATA II protocol defined by the *Serial ATA specification, version 1.0a*. Supporting both the SAS and SATA II interfaces, the SAS controller is a versatile controller that provides the backbone of both server environments and high-end workstation environments.

Each port on the SAS RAID controller supports SAS devices, SATA II devices, or SSD devices using the following protocols:

- SAS Serial SCSI Protocol (SSP), which enables communication with other SAS devices
- SATA II, which enables communication with other SATA II devices
- Serial Management Protocol (SMP), which communicates topology management information directly with an attached SAS expander device
- Serial Tunneling Protocol (STP), which enables communication with a SATA II device through an attached expander



---

## 1.2 Serial-attached SCSI Device Interface

SAS is a serial, point-to-point, enterprise-level device interface that leverages the proven SCSI protocol set. SAS is a convergence of the advantages of SATA II, SCSI, and Fibre Channel, and is the future mainstay of the enterprise and high-end workstation storage markets. SAS offers a higher bandwidth per pin than parallel SCSI, and it improves signal and data integrity.

The SAS interface uses the proven SCSI command set to ensure reliable data transfers, while providing the connectivity and flexibility of point-to-point serial data transfers. The serial transmission of SCSI commands eliminates clock-skew challenges. The SAS interface provides improved performance, simplified cabling, smaller connectors, lower pin count, and lower power requirements when compared to parallel SCSI.

SAS controllers leverage a common electrical and physical connection interface that is compatible with Serial ATA technology. The SAS and SATA II protocols use a thin, 7-wire connector instead of the 68-wire SCSI cable or 26-wire ATA cable. The SAS/SATA II connector and cable are easier to manipulate, allow connections to smaller devices, and do not inhibit airflow. The point-to-point SATA II architecture eliminates inherent difficulties created by the legacy ATA master-slave architecture, while maintaining compatibility with existing ATA firmware.

---

## 1.3 Serial ATA II Features

The SATA bus is a high-speed, internal bus that provides a low pin count, low voltage level bus for device connections between a host controller and a SATA device.

The following list describes the SATA II features of the RAID controllers:

- Supports SATA II data transfers of 3.0 Gbits/s
- Supports STP data transfers of 3.0 Gbits/s
- Provides a serial, point-to-point storage interface
- Simplifies cabling between devices

- Eliminates the master-slave construction used in parallel ATA
- Allows addressing of multiple SATA II targets through an expander
- Allows multiple initiators to address a single target (in a fail-over configuration) through an expander

---

## 1.4 Solid State Drive Features

MegaRAID firmware supports SSD drives attached to MegaRAID SAS controllers. These drives are expected to behave like SATA HDDs or SAS HDDs. The major advantages of SSD drives include:

- High random read speed (because there is no read-write head to move)
- High performance-to-power ratio, as these drives have very low power consumption compared to HDDs
- Low latency
- High mechanical reliability
- Lower weight and size (for low-capacity SSD drives)

The features and operations on SSD drives are the same as for hard disk drives (HDD).

**Note:** MegaRAID implements support for only those SATA SSD drives which support ATA-8 ACS compliance.

You can choose whether to allow a virtual drive to consist of both SSD devices and HDDs. For a virtual drive that consists of SSDs only, you can choose whether to allow SAS SSD drives and SATA SSD drives in that virtual drive. For virtual drives that have both SSDs and HDDs, you can choose whether to mix SAS and SATA HDD drives with SAS and SATA SSD devices in various combinations.

**Note:** Support for SATA SDD drives applies only to those drives that support ATA-8 ACS compliance.

### 1.4.1 Solid State Drive Guard

SSDs are known for their reliability and performance. SSD Guard™, a feature that is unique to MegaRAID, increases the reliability of SSDs by

automatically copying data from a drive with potential to fail to a designated hot spare or newly inserted drive. Because SSDs are very reliable, non-redundant RAID 0 configurations are much more common than in the past. SSD Guard offers added data protection for RAID 0 configurations.

SSD Guard works by looking for a predictive failure while monitoring the SSD S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology) error log. If errors indicate a SSD failure is imminent, MegaRAID starts a rebuild to preserve the data on the SSD and sends appropriate warning event notifications.

---

## 1.5 Dimmer Switch Feature

Powering and cooling drives represents a major cost for data centers. The new MegaRAID Dimmer™ Switch reduces the power consumption of the devices connected to a MegaRAID controller. This helps to share resources more efficiently and lower costs.

With Dimmer Switch, any unconfigured drive connected to a MegaRAID controller is spun down after 30 minutes of inactivity, reducing its power usage. Spun down drives are spun up automatically when you create a configuration using those drives.

---

## 1.6 UEFI 2.0 Support

Significant challenges face operating system and platform developers to innovate using the legacy PC-AT BIOS boot environment. These include memory constraints, maintenance challenges, and increased complexities due to a lack of industry-wide standards.

To handle these challenges, the Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) was developed to do the following:

- Define a clean interface between operating systems and the hardware platform at boot time.
- Support an architecture-independent mechanism for initializing add-in cards.

UEFI 2.0 provides MegaRAID customers with expanded platform support. The MegaRAID UEFI 2.0 driver, a boot service device driver, handles block IO requests and SCSI pass-through commands (SPT), and offers the ability to launch pre-boot MegaRAID management applications through a driver configuration protocol (DCP). The UEFI driver also supports driver diagnostic protocol, which allows administrators to access pre-boot diagnostics.

---

## 1.7 Configuration Scenarios

There are three main scenarios in which you can use the SAS RAID controllers:

- **Low-end, internal SATA II configurations:** In this configuration, use the RAID controller as a high-end SATA II compatible controller that connects up to eight disks either directly or through a port expander. This configuration is mostly for low-end or entry servers. Enclosure management is provided through out-of-band I<sup>2</sup>C bus. Side bands of both types of internal SAS connectors support the SFF-8485 (SGPIO) interface.
- **Midrange internal SAS configurations:** This configuration is like the internal SATA II configurations, but with high-end disks. This configuration is more suitable for low-range to midrange servers.
- **High-end external SAS/SATA II configurations:** This configuration is for both internal connectivity and external connectivity, using SATA II drives, SAS drives, or both. External enclosure management is supported through in-band, SCSI-enclosed storage. The configuration must support STP and SMP.

Figure 1.1 shows a direct-connect configuration. The Inter-IC (I<sup>2</sup>C) interface communicates with peripherals. The external memory bus provides a 32-bit memory bus, parity checking, and chip select signals for pipelined synchronous burst static random access memory (PSBRAM), nonvolatile static random access memory (NVSRAM), and Flash ROM.

**Note:** The external memory bus is 32-bit for the SAS 8704ELP and the SAS 8708ELP, and 64-bit for the SAS 8708EM2, the SAS 8880EM2, and the SAS 8888ELP.

**Figure 1.1 Example of an LSI SAS Direct-Connect Application**

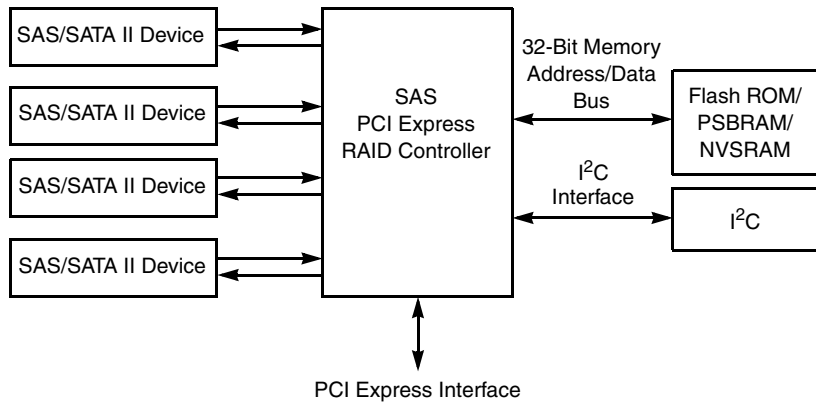
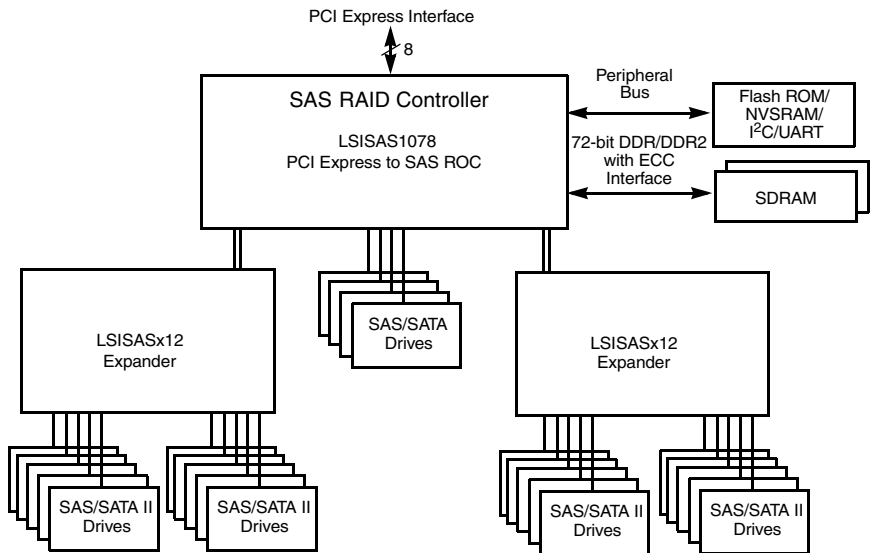


Figure 1.2 shows an example of a SAS RAID controller configured with an LSISASx12 expander that is connected to SAS disks, SATA II disks, or both.

**Figure 1.2 Example of an LSI SAS RAID Controller Configured with an LSISASx12 Expander**



## 1.7.1 Valid Drive Mix Configurations with HDDs and SSDs

You can allow a virtual drive to consist of both SSDs and HDDs. For virtual drives that have both SSDs and HDDs, you can choose whether to mix SAS drives and SATA drives on the SSD devices.

You can choose whether to allow a virtual drive to consist of both SSD devices and HDDs. For a virtual drive that consists of SSDs only, you can choose whether to allow SAS SSD drives and SATA SSD drives in that virtual drive. For virtual drives that have both SSDs and HDDs, you can choose whether to mix SAS and SATA HDD drives with SAS and SATA SSD devices in various combinations.

[Table 1.1](#) lists the valid drive mix configurations you can use when you create virtual drives and allow HDD and SSD mixing. The valid drive mix configurations are based on manufacturer settings.

**Table 1.1 Valid Drive Mix Configurations**

#	Valid Drive Mix Configurations
1.	SAS HDD with SAS SDD (SAS-only configuration)
2.	SATA HDD with SATA SSD (SATA-only configuration)
3.	SAS HDD with a mix of SAS and SATA SSD (a SATA HDD cannot be added)
4.	SATA HDD with a mix of SAS and SATA SSD (a SAS HDD cannot be added)
5.	SAS SSD with a mix of SAS and SATA HDD (a SATA SSD cannot be added)
6.	SATA SSD with a mix of SAS and SATA HDD (a SAS SSD cannot be added)
7.	A mix of SAS and SATA HDD with a mix of SAS and SATA SSD
8.	A SSD cannot be added to a HDD, but a SAS/SATA mix is allowed.

**Note:** Only one of the valid configurations listed in [Table 1.1](#) is allowed based on your controller card manufacturing setting.

**Note:** The valid drive mix also applies to hot spares. For hot spare information, see [Section 2.4.13, “Hot Spares,” page 2-11](#).

---

## 1.8 Technical Support

For assistance with installing, configuring, or running your MegaRAID SAS RAID controller, contact LSI Technical Support:

**Phone Support:**

1-800-633-4545 (North America)





# Chapter 2

## Introduction to RAID

---

This chapter describes RAID (Redundant Array of Independent Disks), RAID functions and benefits, RAID components, RAID levels, and configuration strategies. In addition, it defines the RAID availability concept, and offers tips for configuration planning.

---

### 2.1 RAID Description

RAID is an array, or group of multiple independent physical drives that provide high performance and fault tolerance. A RAID drive group improves I/O (input/output) performance and reliability. The RAID drive group appears to the host computer as a single storage unit or as multiple virtual units. I/O is expedited because several drives can be accessed simultaneously.

---

### 2.2 RAID Benefits

RAID drive groups improve data storage reliability and fault tolerance compared to single-drive storage systems. Data loss resulting from a drive failure can be prevented by reconstructing missing data from the remaining drives. RAID has gained popularity because it improves I/O performance and increases storage subsystem reliability.

---

### 2.3 RAID Functions

Virtual drives are drive groups or spanned drive groups that are available to the operating system. The storage space in a virtual drive is spread across all of the drives in the drive group.

Your drives must be organized into virtual drives in a drive group and they must be able to support the RAID level that you select. Below are some common RAID functions:

- Creating hot spare drives
- Configuring drive groups and virtual drives
- Initializing one or more virtual drives
- Accessing controllers, virtual drives, and drives individually
- Rebuilding failed drives
- Verifying that the redundancy data in virtual drives using RAID level 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60 is correct
- Reconstructing virtual drives after changing RAID levels or adding a drive to a drive group
- Selecting a host controller to work on

---

## 2.4 Components and Features

RAID levels describe a system for ensuring the availability and redundancy of data stored on large disk subsystems. See [Section 2.5, “RAID Levels,”](#) for detailed information about RAID levels. The following subsections describes the components of RAID drive groups and RAID levels.

### 2.4.1 Physical Array

A physical array is a group of drives. The drives are managed in partitions known as virtual drives.

### 2.4.2 Virtual Drive

A virtual drive is a partition in a drive group that is made up of contiguous data segments on the drives. A virtual drive can consist of an entire drive group, more than one entire drive group, a part of a drive group, parts of more than one drive group, or a combination of any two of these conditions.

### 2.4.3 RAID Drive Group

A RAID drive group is one or more drives controlled by the RAID controller.

### 2.4.4 Fault Tolerance

Fault tolerance is the capability of the subsystem to undergo a drive failure or failures without compromising data integrity, and processing capability. The RAID controller provides this support through redundant drive groups in RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. The system can still work properly even with drive failure in a drive group, though performance can be degraded to some extent.

In a span of RAID 1 drive groups, each RAID 1 drive group has two drives and can tolerate one drive failure. The span of RAID 1 drive groups can contain up to 32 drives, and tolerate up to 16 drive failures - one in each drive group. A RAID 5 drive group can tolerate one drive failure in each RAID 5 drive group. A RAID 6 drive group can tolerate up to two drive failures.

Each spanned RAID 10 virtual drive can tolerate multiple drive failures, as long as each failure is in a separate drive group. A RAID 50 virtual drive can tolerate two drive failures, as long as each failure is in a separate drive group. RAID 60 drive groups can tolerate up to two drive failures in each drive group.

**Note:** RAID level 0 is not fault tolerant. If a drive in a RAID 0 drive group fails, the whole virtual drive (all drives associated with the virtual drive) will fail.

Fault tolerance is often associated with system availability because it allows the system to be available during the failures. However, this means that it is also important for the system to be available during the repair of the problem.

A hot spare is an unused drive that, in case of a disk failure in a redundant RAID drive group, can be used to rebuild the data and re-establish redundancy. After the hot spare is automatically moved into the RAID drive group, the data is automatically rebuilt on the hot spare drive. The RAID drive group continues to handle requests while the rebuild occurs.

Auto-rebuild allows a failed drive to be replaced and the data automatically rebuilt by “hot-swapping” the drive in the same drive bay. The RAID drive group continues to handle requests while the rebuild occurs.

#### **2.4.4.1 Multipathing**

The firmware provides support for detecting and using multiple paths from the RAID controllers to the SAS devices that are in enclosures. Devices connected to enclosures have multiple paths to them. With redundant paths to the same port of a device, if one path fails, another path can be used to communicate between the controller and the device. Using multiple paths with load balancing, instead of a single path, can increase reliability through redundancy.

Applications show the enclosures and the drives connected to the enclosures. The firmware dynamically recognizes new enclosures added to a configuration along with their contents (new drives). In addition, the firmware dynamically adds the enclosure and its contents to the management entity currently in-use.

Multipathing provides the following features:

- Support for failover, in the event of path failure
- Auto-discovery of new or restored paths while the system is online, and reversion to system load balancing policy
- Measurable bandwidth improvement to the multi-path device
- Support for changing the load balancing path while the system is online

The firmware determines whether enclosure modules (ESMs) are part of the same enclosure. When a new enclosure module is added (allowing multi-path) or removed (going single path), an Asynchronous Event Notification (AEN) is generated. AENs about drives contain correct information about the "enclosure", when the drives are connected by multiple paths. The enclosure module detects partner ESMs and issue events appropriately.

In a system with two ESMs, you can replace one of the ESMs without affecting the virtual drive availability. For example, the controller can run heavy I/Os, and when you replace one of the ESM modules, I/Os should

not stop. The controller uses different paths to balance the load on the entire system.

In the MegaRAID Storage Manager utility, when multiple paths are available to a drive, the drive information will show only one enclosure. The utility shows that a redundant path is available to a drive. All drives with a redundant path display this information. The firmware supports online replacement of enclosure modules.

## 2.4.5 Consistency Check

The Consistency Check operation verifies correctness of the data in virtual drives that use RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. (RAID 0 does not provide data redundancy). For example, in a system with parity, checking consistency means computing the data on one drive and comparing the results to the contents of the parity drive.

**Note:** It is recommended that you perform a consistency check at least once a month.

## 2.4.6 Copyback

The copyback feature allows you to copy data from a source drive of a virtual drive to a destination drive that is not a part of the virtual drive. Copyback is often used to create or restore a specific physical configuration for a drive group (for example, a specific arrangement of drive group members on the device I/O buses). Copyback can be run automatically or manually.

Typically, when a drive fails or is expected to fail, the data is rebuilt on a hot spare. The failed drive is replaced with a new disk. Then the data is copied from the hot spare to the new drive, and the hot spare reverts from a rebuild drive to its original hot spare status. The copyback operation runs as a background activity, and the virtual drive is still available online to the host.

Copyback is also initiated when the first Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology (SMART) error occurs on a drive that is part of a virtual drive. The destination drive is a hot spare that qualifies as a rebuild drive. The drive with the SMART error is marked as "failed" only after the successful completion of the copyback. This avoids putting the drive group in degraded status.

**Note:** During a copyback operation, if the drive group involved in the copyback is deleted because of a virtual drive deletion, the destination drive reverts to an Unconfigured Good state or hot spare state.

### **Order of Precedence –**

In the following scenarios, rebuild takes precedence over the copyback operation:

1. If a copyback operation is already taking place to a hot spare drive, and any virtual drive on the controller degrades, the copyback operation aborts, and a rebuild starts. The rebuild changes the virtual drive to the optimal state.
2. The rebuild operation takes precedence over the copyback operation when the conditions exist to start both operations. For example:
  - a. Where the hot spare is not configured (or unavailable) in the system.
  - b. There are two drives (both members of virtual drives), with one drive exceeding the SMART error threshold, and the other failed.
  - c. If you add a hot spare (assume a global hot spare) during a copyback operation, the copyback is aborted, and the rebuild operation starts on the hot spare.

## **2.4.7 Background Initialization**

Background initialization is a consistency check that is forced when you create a virtual drive. The difference between a background initialization and a consistency check is that a background initialization is forced on new virtual drives. This is an automatic operation that starts 5 minutes after you create the virtual drive.

Background initialization is a check for media errors on the drives. It ensures that striped data segments are the same on all drives in a drive group. The default and recommended background initialization rate is 30 percent. Before you change the rebuild rate, you must stop the background initialization or the rate change will not affect the background initialization rate. After you stop background initialization and change the rebuild rate, the rate change takes effect when you restart background initialization.

## 2.4.8 Patrol Read

Patrol read involves the review of your system for possible drive errors that could lead to drive failure and then action to correct errors. The goal is to protect data integrity by detecting drive failure before the failure can damage data. The corrective actions depend on the drive group configuration and the type of errors.

Patrol read starts only when the controller is idle for a defined period of time and no other background tasks are active, though it can continue to run during heavy I/O processes.

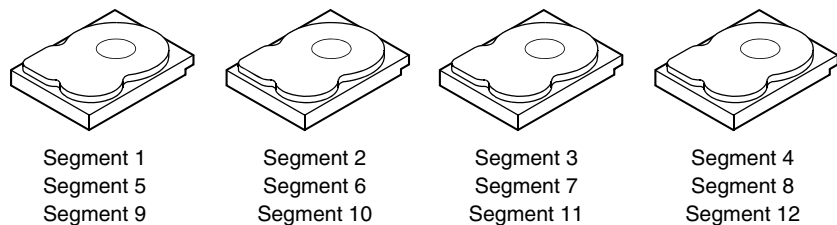
You can use the MegaRAID Command Tool or the MegaRAID Storage Manager to select the patrol read options, which you can use to set automatic or manual operation, or disable patrol read. See [Section 4.4, “Controller Property-Related Options,”](#) or [Section 8.5, “Running a Patrol Read”](#).

## 2.4.9 Disk Striping

Disk striping allows you to write data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. Disk striping involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size from 8 KB to 1024 KB. These stripes are interleaved in a repeated sequential manner. The combined storage space is composed of stripes from each drive. It is recommended that you keep stripe sizes the same across RAID drive groups.

For example, in a four-disk system using only disk striping (used in RAID level 0), segment 1 is written to disk 1, segment 2 is written to disk 2, and so on. Disk striping enhances performance because multiple drives are accessed simultaneously, but disk striping does not provide data redundancy.

**Figure 2.1 Example of Disk Striping (RAID 0)**



### 2.4.9.1 Stripe Width

Stripe width is the number of drives involved in a drive group where striping is implemented. For example, a four-disk drive group with disk striping has a stripe width of four.

### 2.4.9.2 Stripe Size

The stripe size is the length of the interleaved data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of disk space and has 16 KB of data residing on each disk in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB.

### 2.4.9.3 Strip Size

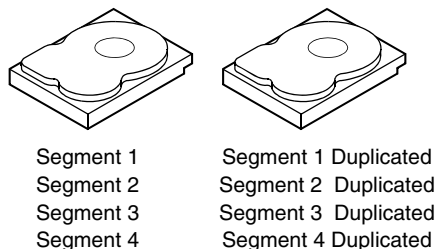
The strip size is the portion of a stripe that resides on a single drive.

## 2.4.10 Disk Mirroring

With mirroring (used in RAID 1 and RAID 10), data written to one drive is simultaneously written to another drive. The primary advantage of disk mirroring is that it provides 100 percent data redundancy. Because the contents of the disk are completely written to a second disk, data is not lost if one disk fails. In addition, both drives contain the same data at all times, so either disk can act as the operational disk. If one disk fails, the contents of the other disk can be used to run the system and reconstruct the failed disk.

Disk mirroring provides 100 percent redundancy, but is expensive because each drive in the system must be duplicated. [Figure 2.2](#) shows an example of disk mirroring.

**Figure 2.2 Example of Disk Mirroring (RAID 1)**





## 2.4.11 Parity

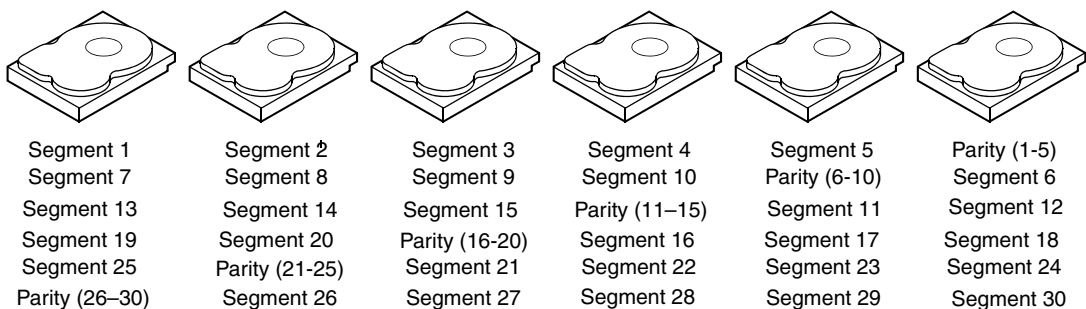
Parity generates a set of redundancy data from two or more parent data sets. The redundancy data can be used to reconstruct one of the parent data sets in the event of a drive failure. Parity data does not fully duplicate the parent data sets, but parity generation can slow the write process. In RAID, this method is applied to entire drives or stripes across all of the drives in a drive group. The types of parity are described in [Table 2.1](#).

**Table 2.1 Types of Parity**

Parity Type	Description
Dedicated	The parity data on two or more drives is stored on an additional disk.
Distributed	The parity data is distributed across more than one drive in the system.

RAID 5 combines distributed parity with disk striping. If a single drive fails, it can be rebuilt from the parity and the data on the remaining drives. An example of a RAID 5 drive group is shown in [Figure 2.3](#). RAID 5 uses parity to provide redundancy for one drive failure without duplicating the contents of entire drives. RAID 6 uses distributed parity and disk striping, also, but adds a second set of parity data so that it can survive up to two drive failures.

**Figure 2.3 Example of Distributed Parity (RAID 5)**



Note: Parity is distributed across all drives in the drive group.

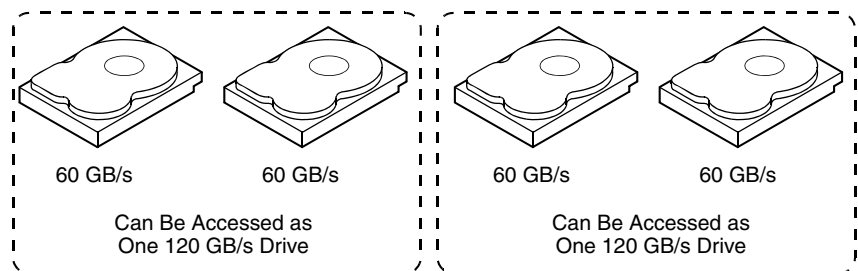
## 2.4.12 Disk Spanning

Disk spanning allows multiple drives to function like one big drive. Spanning overcomes lack of disk space and simplifies storage management by combining existing resources or adding relatively inexpensive resources. For example, four 20 GB drives can be combined to appear to the operating system as a single 80 GB drive.

Spanning alone does not provide reliability or performance enhancements. Spanned virtual drives must have the same stripe size and must be contiguous. In [Figure 2.4](#), RAID 1 drive groups are turned into a RAID 10 drive group.

**Note:** Make sure that the spans are in different backplanes, so that if one span fails, you do not lose the whole drive group.

**Figure 2.4 Example of Disk Spanning**



**Note:** Spanning two contiguous RAID 0 virtual drives does not produce a new RAID level or add fault tolerance. It does increase the capacity of the virtual drive and improves performance by doubling the number of spindles.

### 2.4.12.1 Spanning for RAID 00, RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60

[Table 2.2](#) describes how to configure RAID 00, RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60 by spanning. The virtual drives must have the same stripe size and the maximum number of spans is eight. The full drive capacity is used when you span virtual drives; you cannot specify a smaller drive capacity.

See [Section Chapter 7, “Configuration”](#) for detailed procedures for configuring drive groups and virtual drives, and spanning the drives.

**Table 2.2 Spanning for RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60**

Level	Description
00	Configure RAID 00 by spanning two contiguous RAID 0 virtual drives, up to the maximum number of supported devices for the controller.
10	Configure RAID 10 by spanning two contiguous RAID 1 virtual drives, up to the maximum number of supported devices for the controller. RAID 10 supports a maximum of eight spans. You must use an even number of drives in each RAID virtual drive in the span. The RAID 1 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.
50	Configure RAID 50 by spanning two contiguous RAID 5 virtual drives. The RAID 5 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.
60	Configure RAID 60 by spanning two contiguous RAID 6 virtual drives. The RAID 6 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.

### 2.4.13 Hot Spares

A hot spare is an extra, unused drive that is part of the disk subsystem. It is usually in standby mode, ready for service if a drive fails. Hot spares permit you to replace failed drives without system shutdown or user intervention. MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers can implement automatic and transparent rebuilds of failed drives using hot spare drives, providing a high degree of fault tolerance and zero downtime.

**Note:** When running RAID 0 and RAID 5 virtual drives on the same set of drives (a sliced configuration), a rebuild to a hot spare will not occur after a drive failure until the RAID 0 virtual drive is deleted.

The RAID management software allows you to specify drives as hot spares. When a hot spare is needed, the RAID controller assigns the hot spare that has a capacity closest to and at least as great as that of the failed drive to take the place of the failed drive. The failed drive is removed from the virtual drive and marked ready awaiting removal once the rebuild to a hot spare begins. You can make hot spares of the drives that are not in a RAID virtual drive.

You can use the RAID management software to designate the hot spare to have enclosure affinity, meaning that if there are drive failures present on a split backplane configuration, the hot spare will be used first on the backplane side that it resides in.

If the hot spare is designated as having enclosure affinity, it will attempt to rebuild any failed drives on the backplane that it resides in before rebuilding any other drives on other backplanes.

**Note:** If a rebuild to a hot spare fails for any reason, the hot spare drive will be marked as "failed". If the source drive fails, both the source drive and the hot spare drive will be marked as "failed".

There are two types of hot spares:

- Global hot spare
- Dedicated hot spare

#### **2.4.13.1 Global Hot Spare**

A global hot spare drive can be used to replace any failed drive in a redundant drive group as long as its capacity is equal to or larger than the coerced capacity of the failed drive. A global hot spare defined on any channel should be available to replace a failed drive on both channels.

#### **2.4.13.2 Dedicated Hot Spare**

A dedicated hot spare can be used to replace a failed drive only in a selected drive group. One or more drives can be designated as a member of a spare drive pool. The most suitable drive from the pool is selected for fail over. A dedicated hot spare is used before one from the global hot spare pool.

Hot spare drives can be located on any RAID channel. Standby hot spares (not being used in RAID drive group) are polled every 60 seconds at a minimum, and their status made available in the drive group management software. RAID controllers offer the ability to rebuild with a disk that is in a system, but not initially set to be a hot spare.

Observe the following parameters when using hot spares:

- Hot spares are used only in drive groups with redundancy: RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60.
- A hot spare connected to a specific RAID controller can be used to rebuild a drive that is connected to the same controller only.

- You must assign the hot spare to one or more drives through the controller BIOS or use drive group management software to place it in the hot spare pool.
- A hot spare must have free space equal to or greater than the drive it replaces. For example, to replace an 18 GB drive, the hot spare must be 18 GB or larger.

## 2.4.14 Disk Rebuilds

When a drive in a RAID drive group fails, you can rebuild the drive by recreating the data that was stored on the drive before it failed. The RAID controller recreates the data using the data stored on the other drives in the drive group. Rebuilding can be done only in drive groups with data redundancy, which includes RAID 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60 drive groups.

The RAID controller uses hot spares to rebuild failed drives automatically and transparently, at user-defined rebuild rates. If a hot spare is available, the rebuild can start automatically when a drive fails. If a hot spare is not available, the failed drive must be replaced with a new drive so that the data on the failed drive can be rebuilt.

The failed drive is removed from the virtual drive and marked ready awaiting removal when the rebuild to a hot spare begins. If the system goes down during a rebuild, the RAID controller automatically restarts the rebuild after the system reboots.

**Note:** When the rebuild to a hot spare begins, the failed drive is often removed from the virtual drive before management applications detect the failed drive. When this occurs, the events logs show the drive rebuilding to the hot spare without showing the failed drive. The formerly failed drive will be marked as "ready" after a rebuild begins to a hot spare.

**Note:** If a source drive fails during a rebuild to a hot spare, the rebuild fails, and the failed source drive is marked as offline. In addition, the rebuilding hot spare drive is changed back to a hot spare. After a rebuild fails because of a source drive failure, the dedicated hot spare is still dedicated and assigned to the correct drive group, and the global hot spare is still global.

An automatic drive rebuild will not start if you replace a drive during a RAID-level migration. The rebuild must be started manually after the expansion or migration procedure is complete.

## 2.4.15 Rebuild Rate

The rebuild rate is the percentage of the compute cycles dedicated to rebuilding failed drives. A rebuild rate of 100 percent means that the system gives priority to rebuilding the failed drives.

The rebuild rate can be configured between 0 percent and 100 percent. At 0 percent, the rebuild is done only if the system is not doing anything else. At 100 percent, the rebuild has a higher priority than any other system activity. Using 0 or 100 percent is not recommended. The default rebuild rate is 30 percent.

## 2.4.16 Hot Swap

A hot swap is the manual replacement of a defective drive unit while the computer is still running. When a new drive has been installed, a rebuild will occur automatically if:

- The newly inserted drive is the same capacity as or larger than the failed drive
- It is placed in the same drive bay as the failed drive it is replacing

The RAID controller can be configured to detect the new drives and rebuild the contents of the drive automatically.

## 2.4.17 Drive States

A drive state is a property indicating the status of the drive. The drive states are described in [Table 2.3](#).

**Table 2.3 Drive States**

State	Description
Online	A drive that can be accessed by the RAID controller and is part of the virtual drive.
Unconfigured Good	A drive that is functioning normally but is not configured as a part of a virtual drive or as a hot spare.

**Table 2.3 Drive States (Cont.)**

State	Description
Hot Spare	A drive that is powered up and ready for use as a spare in case an online drive fails.
Failed	A drive that was originally configured as Online or Hot Spare, but on which the firmware detects an unrecoverable error.
Rebuild	A drive to which data is being written to restore full redundancy for a virtual drive.
Unconfigured Bad	A drive on which the firmware detects an unrecoverable error; the drive was Unconfigured Good or the drive could not be initialized.
Missing	A drive that was Online but which has been removed from its location.
Offline	A drive that is part of a virtual drive but which has invalid data as far as the RAID configuration is concerned.  Note: When a virtual drive with cached data goes offline, the cache for the virtual drive is discarded. Because the virtual drive is offline, the cache cannot be saved.

## 2.4.18 Virtual Drive States

The virtual drive states are described in [Table 2.4](#).

**Table 2.4 Virtual Drive States**

State	Description
Optimal	The virtual drive operating condition is good. All configured drives are online.
Degraded	The virtual drive operating condition is not optimal. One of the configured drives has failed or is offline.
Partial Degraded	The operating condition in a RAID 6 virtual drive is not optimal. One of the configured drives has failed or is offline. RAID 6 can tolerate up to two drive failures.
Failed	The virtual drive has failed.
Offline	The virtual drive is not available to the RAID controller.

## 2.4.19 Enclosure Management

Enclosure management is the intelligent monitoring of the disk subsystem by software and/or hardware. The disk subsystem can be part of the host computer or can reside in an external disk enclosure. Enclosure management helps you stay informed of events in the disk subsystem, such as a drive or power supply failure. Enclosure management increases the fault tolerance of the disk subsystem.

---

## 2.5 RAID Levels

The RAID controller supports RAID levels 0, 00, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. The supported RAID levels are summarized in the following section. In addition, it supports independent drives (configured as RAID 0 and RAID 00.) The following sections describe the RAID levels in detail.

### 2.5.1 Summary of RAID Levels

RAID 0 uses striping to provide high data throughput, especially for large files in an environment that does not require fault tolerance.

RAID 1 uses mirroring so that data written to one drive is simultaneously written to another drive. This is good for small databases or other applications that require small capacity but complete data redundancy.

RAID 5 uses disk striping and parity data across all drives (distributed parity) to provide high data throughput, especially for small random access.

RAID 6 uses distributed parity, with two independent parity blocks per stripe, and disk striping. A RAID 6 virtual drive can survive the loss of two drives without losing data. A RAID 6 drive group, which requires a minimum of three drives, is similar to a RAID 5 drive group. Blocks of data and parity information are written across all drives. The parity information is used to recover the data if one or two drives fail in the drive group.

A RAID 00 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of RAID 0 drive groups.



RAID 10, a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 1, consists of striped data across mirrored spans. A RAID 10 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of mirrored drives. RAID 10 allows a maximum of eight spans. You must use an even number of drives in each RAID virtual drive in the span. The RAID 1 virtual drives must have the same stripe size. RAID 10 provides high data throughput and complete data redundancy but uses a larger number of spans.

RAID 50, a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 5, uses distributed parity and disk striping. A RAID 50 drive group is a spanned drive group in which data is striped across multiple RAID 5 drive groups. RAID 50 works best with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfers, and medium-to-large capacity.

**Note:** Having virtual drives of different RAID levels, such as RAID 0 and RAID 5, in the same drive group is not allowed. For example, if an existing RAID 5 virtual drive is created out of partial space in an array, the next virtual drive in the array has to be R5 only.

RAID 60, a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 6, uses distributed parity, with two independent parity blocks per stripe in each RAID set, and disk striping. A RAID 60 virtual drive can survive the loss of two drives in each of the RAID 6 sets without losing data. It works best with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfers, and medium-to-large capacity.

## 2.5.2 Selecting a RAID Level

To ensure the best performance, you should select the optimal RAID level when you create a system drive. The optimal RAID level for your drive group depends on a number of factors:

- The number of drives in the drive group
- The capacity of the drives in the drive group
- The need for data redundancy
- The disk performance requirements

## 2.5.3 RAID 0

RAID 0 provides disk striping across all drives in the RAID drive group. RAID 0 does not provide any data redundancy, but, along with RAID 0, does offer the best performance of any RAID level. RAID 0 breaks up data into smaller segments, and then stripes the data segments across each drive in the drive group. The size of each data segment is determined by the stripe size. RAID 0 offers high bandwidth.

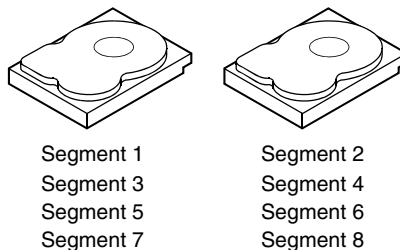
**Note:** RAID level 0 is not fault tolerant. If a drive in a RAID 0 drive group fails, the whole virtual drive (all drives associated with the virtual drive) will fail.

By breaking up a large file into smaller segments, the RAID controller can use both SAS drives and SATA drives to read or write the file faster. RAID 0 involves no parity calculations to complicate the write operation. This makes RAID 0 ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance. [Table 2.5](#) provides an overview of RAID 0. [Figure 2.5](#) provides a graphic example of a RAID 0 drive group.

**Table 2.5 RAID 0 Overview**

<b>Uses</b>	Provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Any environment that does not require fault tolerance.
<b>Strong Points</b>	Provides increased data throughput for large files. No capacity loss penalty for parity.
<b>Weak Points</b>	Does not provide fault tolerance or high bandwidth. All data lost if any drive fails.
<b>Drives</b>	1 to 32

**Figure 2.5 RAID 0 Drive Group Example with Two Drives**



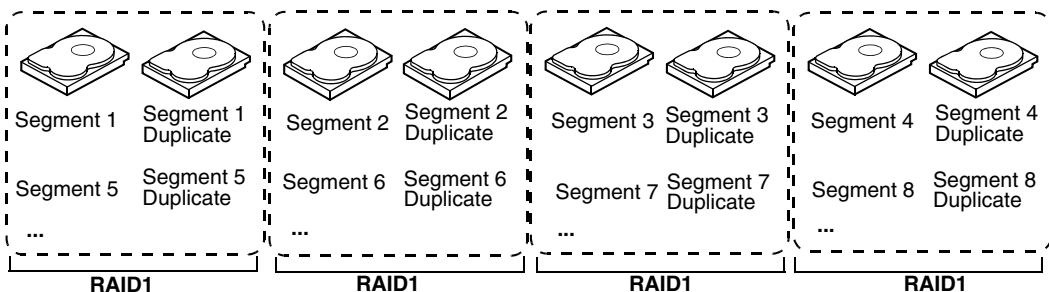
## 2.5.4 RAID 1

In RAID 1, the RAID controller duplicates all data from one drive to a second drive in the drive group. RAID 1 supports an even number of drives from 2 to 32 in a single span. RAID 1 provides complete data redundancy, but at the cost of doubling the required data storage capacity. [Table 2.6](#) provides an overview of RAID 1. [Figure 2.6](#) provides a graphic example of a RAID 1 drive group.

**Table 2.6 RAID 1 Overview**

<b>Uses</b>	Use RAID 1 for small databases or any other environment that requires fault tolerance but small capacity.
<b>Strong Points</b>	Provides complete data redundancy. RAID 1 is ideal for any application that requires fault tolerance and minimal capacity.
<b>Weak Points</b>	Requires twice as many drives. Performance is impaired during drive rebuilds.
<b>Drives</b>	2 - 32 (must be an even number of drives)

**Figure 2.6 RAID 1 Drive Group**



## 2.5.5 RAID 5

RAID 5 includes disk striping at the block level and parity. Parity is the data's property of being odd or even, and parity checking is used to detect errors in the data. In RAID 5, the parity information is written to all drives. RAID 5 is best suited for networks that perform a lot of small input/output (I/O) transactions simultaneously.

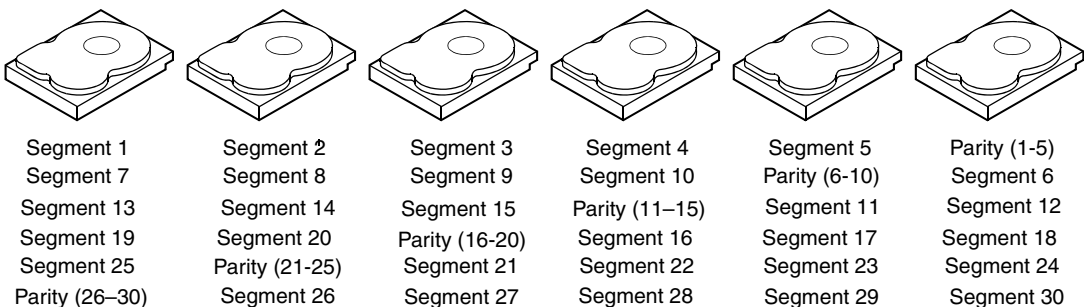
RAID 5 addresses the bottleneck issue for random I/O operations. Because each drive contains both data and parity, numerous writes can take place concurrently.

Table 2.7 provides an overview of RAID 5. Figure 2.7 provides a graphic example of a RAID 5 drive group.

**Table 2.7 RAID 5 Overview**

<b>Uses</b>	Provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Use RAID 5 for transaction processing applications because each drive can read and write independently. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity drive to recreate all missing information. Use also for office automation and online customer service that requires fault tolerance. Use for any application that has high read request rates but low write request rates.
<b>Strong Points</b>	Provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. Provides redundancy with lowest loss of capacity.
<b>Weak Points</b>	Not well-suited to tasks requiring lot of writes. Suffers more impact if no cache is used (clustering). Drive performance will be reduced if a drive is being rebuilt. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.
<b>Drives</b>	3 to 32

**Figure 2.7 RAID 5 Drive Group with Six Drives**



Note: Parity is distributed across all drives in the drive group.

## 2.5.6 RAID 6

RAID 6 is similar to RAID 5 (disk striping and parity), except that instead of one parity block per stripe, there are two. With two independent parity blocks, RAID 6 can survive the loss of two drives in a virtual drive without losing data. Provides a high level of data protection through the use of a second parity block in each stripe. Use RAID 6 for data that requires a very high level of protection from loss.

In the case of a failure of one drive or two drives in a virtual drive, the RAID controller uses the parity blocks to recreate all of the missing information. If two drives in a RAID 6 virtual drive fail, two drive rebuilds are required, one for each drive. These rebuilds do not occur at the same time. The controller rebuilds one failed drive, and then the other failed drive.

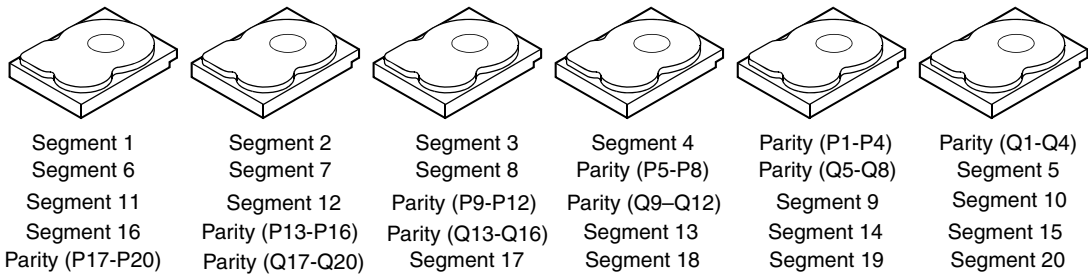
Table 2.6 provides a graphic example of a RAID 6 drive group.

**Table 2.8 RAID 6 Overview**

<b>Uses</b>	Use for office automation and online customer service that requires fault tolerance. Use for any application that has high read request rates but low write request rates.
<b>Strong Points</b>	Provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. Can survive the loss of two drives or the loss of a drive while another drive is being rebuilt. Provides the highest level of protection against drive failures of all of the RAID levels. Read performance is similar to that of RAID 5.
<b>Weak Points</b>	Not well-suited to tasks requiring a lot of writes. A RAID 6 virtual drive has to generate two sets of parity data for each write operation, which results in a significant decrease in performance during writes. Drive performance is reduced during a drive rebuild. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes. RAID 6 costs more because of the extra capacity required by using two parity blocks per stripe.
<b>Drives</b>	3 to 32

Figure 2.8 shows a RAID 6 data layout. The second set of parity drives are denoted by *Q*. The *P* drives follow the RAID 5 parity scheme.

**Figure 2.8 Example of Distributed Parity across Two Blocks in a Stripe (RAID 6)**



Note: Parity is distributed across all drives in the drive group.

## 2.5.7 RAID 00

A RAID 00 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of RAID 0 drive groups. RAID 00 does not provide any data redundancy, but, along with RAID 0, does offer the best performance of any RAID level. RAID 00 breaks up data into smaller segments and then stripes the data segments across each drive in the drive groups. The size of each data segment is determined by the stripe size. RAID 00 offers high bandwidth.

**Note:** RAID level 00 is not fault tolerant. If a drive in a RAID 0 drive group fails, the whole virtual drive (all drives associated with the virtual drive) will fail.

By breaking up a large file into smaller segments, the RAID controller can use both SAS drives and SATA drives to read or write the file faster. RAID 00 involves no parity calculations to complicate the write operation. This makes RAID 00 ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance. [Table 2.6](#) provides an overview of RAID 00. [Figure 2.6](#) provides a graphic example of a RAID 00 drive group.

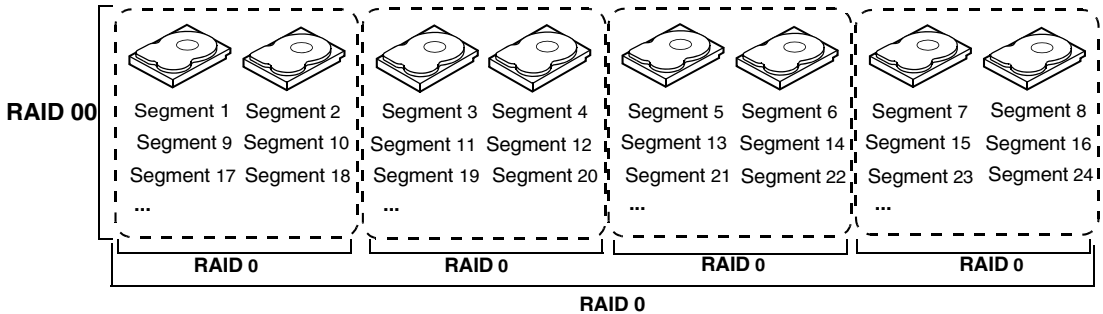
**Table 2.9 RAID 00 Overview**

<b>Uses</b>	Provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Any environment that does not require fault tolerance.
<b>Strong Points</b>	Provides increased data throughput for large files. No capacity loss penalty for parity.

**Table 2.9 RAID 00 Overview**

<b>Weak Points</b>	Does not provide fault tolerance or high bandwidth. All data lost if any drive fails.
<b>Drives</b>	2 to 256

**Figure 2.9 RAID 00 Drive Group Example with Two Drives**



## 2.5.8 RAID 10

RAID 10 is a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 1, and consists of stripes across mirrored drives. RAID 10 breaks up data into smaller blocks and then mirrors the blocks of data to each RAID 1 drive group. The first RAID 1 drive in each drive group then duplicates its data to the second drive. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set. The RAID 1 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.

Spanning is used because one virtual drive is defined across more than one drive group. Virtual drives defined across multiple RAID 1 level drive groups are referred to as RAID level 10, (1+0). Data is striped across drive groups to increase performance by enabling access to multiple drive groups simultaneously.

Each spanned RAID 10 virtual drive can tolerate multiple drive failures, as long as each failure is in a separate drive group. If there are drive failures, less than total drive capacity is available.

Configure RAID 10 by spanning two contiguous RAID 1 virtual drives, up to the maximum number of supported devices for the controller. RAID 10 supports a maximum of eight spans, with a maximum of 32 drives per

span. You must use an even number of drives in each RAID 10 virtual drive in the span.

**Note:** Other factors, such as the type of controller, can restrict the number of drives supported by RAID 10 virtual drives.

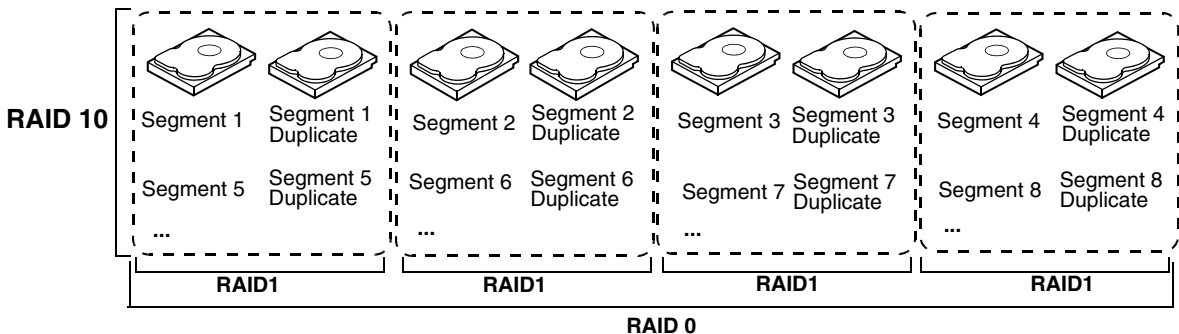
Table 2.10 provides an overview of RAID 10.

**Table 2.10 RAID 10 Overview**

<b>Uses</b>	Appropriate when used with data storage that needs 100 percent redundancy of mirrored drive groups and that also needs the enhanced I/O performance of RAID 0 (striped drive groups.) RAID 10 works well for medium-sized databases or any environment that requires a higher degree of fault tolerance and moderate to medium capacity.
<b>Strong Points</b>	Provides both high data transfer rates and complete data redundancy.
<b>Weak Points</b>	Requires twice as many drives as all other RAID levels except RAID 1.
<b>Drives</b>	4 - the maximum number of drives supported by the controller (with a maximum of eight spans)

In Figure 2.10, virtual drive 0 is created by distributing data across four drive groups (drive groups 0 through 3).

**Figure 2.10 RAID 10 Level Virtual Drive**



## 2.5.9 RAID 50

RAID 50 provides the features of both RAID 0 and RAID 5. RAID 50 includes both parity and disk striping across multiple drive groups. RAID



50 is best implemented on two RAID 5 drive groups with data striped across both drive groups.

RAID 50 breaks up data into smaller blocks and then stripes the blocks of data to each RAID 5 disk set. RAID 5 breaks up data into smaller blocks, calculates parity by performing an exclusive-or on the blocks and then writes the blocks of data and parity to each drive in the drive group. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set.

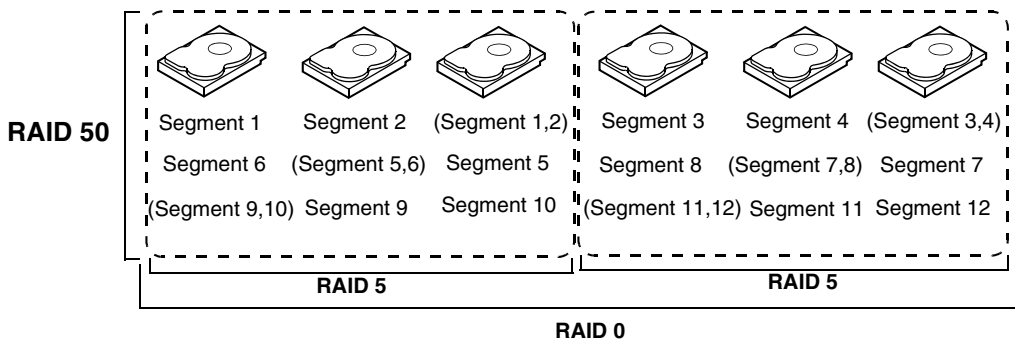
RAID level 50 can support up to eight spans and tolerate up to eight drive failures, though less than total drive capacity is available. Though multiple drive failures can be tolerated, only one drive failure can be tolerated in each RAID 5 level drive group.

Table 2.11 provides an overview of RAID 50.

**Table 2.11 RAID 50 Overview**

<b>Uses</b>	Appropriate when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfer, and medium to large capacity.
<b>Strong Points</b>	Provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance.
<b>Weak Points</b>	Requires 2 to 8 times as many parity drives as RAID 5.
<b>Drives</b>	Eight spans of RAID 5 drive groups containing 3-32 drives each (limited by the maximum number of devices supported by the controller)

**Figure 2.11 RAID 50 Level Virtual Drive**



## 2.5.10 RAID 60

RAID 60 provides the features of both RAID 0 and RAID 6, and includes both parity and disk striping across multiple drive groups. RAID 6 supports two independent parity blocks per stripe. A RAID 60 virtual drive can survive the loss of two drives in each of the RAID 6 sets without losing data. RAID 60 is best implemented on two RAID 6 drive groups with data striped across both drive groups.

RAID 60 breaks up data into smaller blocks, and then stripes the blocks of data to each RAID 6 disk set. RAID 6 breaks up data into smaller blocks, calculates parity by performing an exclusive-or on the blocks and then writes the blocks of data and parity to each drive in the drive group. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set.

RAID 60 can support up to 8 spans and tolerate up to 16 drive failures, though less than total drive capacity is available. Two drive failures can be tolerated in each RAID 6 level drive group.

**Table 2.12 RAID 60 Overview**

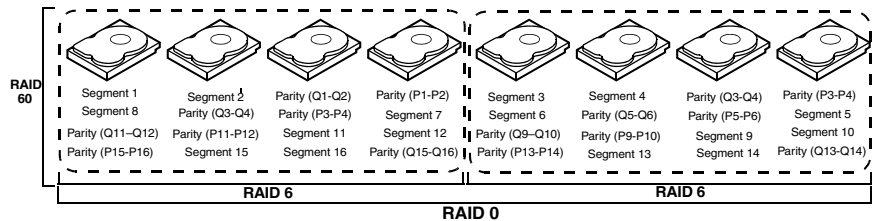
<b>Uses</b>	<p>Provides a high level of data protection through the use of a second parity block in each stripe. Use RAID 60 for data that requires a very high level of protection from loss.</p> <p>In the case of a failure of one drive or two drives in a RAID set in a virtual drive, the RAID controller uses the parity blocks to recreate all of the missing information. If two drives in a RAID 6 set in a RAID 60 virtual drive fail, two drive rebuilds are required, one for each drive. These rebuilds can occur at the same time.</p> <p>Use for office automation and online customer service that requires fault tolerance. Use for any application that has high read request rates but low write request rates.</p>
<b>Strong Points</b>	<p>Provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. Each RAID 6 set can survive the loss of two drives or the loss of a drive while another drive is being rebuilt. Provides the highest level of protection against drive failures of all of the RAID levels. Read performance is similar to that of RAID 50, though random reads in RAID 60 might be slightly faster because data is spread across at least one more disk in each RAID 6 set.</p>

**Table 2.12 RAID 60 Overview**

<b>Weak Points</b>	Not well suited to tasks requiring lot of writes. A RAID 60 virtual drive has to generate two sets of parity data for each write operation, which results in a significant decrease in performance during writes. Drive performance is reduced during a drive rebuild. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes. RAID 6 costs more because of the extra capacity required by using two parity blocks per stripe.
<b>Drives</b>	A minimum of 8

Figure 2.12 shows a RAID 6 data layout. The second set of parity drives are denoted by *Q*. The *P* drives follow the RAID 5 parity scheme.

**Figure 2.12 RAID 60 Level Virtual Drive**



Note: Parity is distributed across all drives in the drive group.

## 2.6 RAID Configuration Strategies

The most important factors in RAID drive group configuration are:

- Virtual drive availability (fault tolerance)
- Virtual drive performance
- Virtual drive capacity

You cannot configure a virtual drive that optimizes all three factors, but it is easy to choose a virtual drive configuration that maximizes one factor at the expense of another factor. For example, RAID 1 (mirroring) provides excellent fault tolerance, but requires a redundant drive. The following subsections describe how to use the RAID levels to

maximize virtual drive availability (fault tolerance), virtual drive performance, and virtual drive capacity.

## 2.6.1 Maximizing Fault Tolerance

Fault tolerance is achieved through the ability to perform automatic and transparent rebuilds using hot spare drives and hot swaps. A hot spare drive is an unused online available drive that the RAID controller instantly plugs into the system when an active drive fails. After the hot spare is automatically moved into the RAID drive group, the failed drive is automatically rebuilt on the spare drive. The RAID drive group continues to handle requests while the rebuild occurs.

A hot swap is the manual substitution of a replacement unit in a disk subsystem for a defective one, where the substitution can be performed while the subsystem is running hot swap drives. Auto-Rebuild in the WebBIOS Configuration Utility allows a failed drive to be replaced and automatically rebuilt by “hot-swapping” the drive in the same drive bay. The RAID drive group continues to handle requests while the rebuild occurs, providing a high degree of fault tolerance and zero downtime.

**Table 2.13 RAID Levels and Fault Tolerance**

<b>RAID Level</b>	<b>Fault Tolerance</b>
0	Does not provide fault tolerance. All data is lost if any drive fails. Disk striping writes data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. It involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size. RAID 0 is ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance.
1	Provides complete data redundancy. If one drive fails, the contents of the other drive in the drive group can be used to run the system and reconstruct the failed drive. The primary advantage of disk mirroring is that it provides 100 percent data redundancy. Since the contents of the drive are completely written to a second drive, no data is lost if one of the drives fails. Both drives contain the same data at all times. RAID 1 is ideal for any application that requires fault tolerance and minimal capacity.
5	Combines distributed parity with disk striping. Parity provides redundancy for one drive failure without duplicating the contents of entire drives. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity data to reconstruct all missing information. In RAID 5, this method is applied to entire drives or stripes across all drives in a drive group. Using distributed parity, RAID 5 offers fault tolerance with limited overhead.

RAID Level	Fault Tolerance
6	Combines distributed parity with disk striping. RAID 6 can sustain two drive failures and still maintain data integrity. Parity provides redundancy for two drive failures without duplicating the contents of entire drives. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity data to reconstruct all missing information. In RAID 6, this method is applied to entire drives or stripes across all of the drives in a drive group. Using distributed parity, RAID 6 offers fault tolerance with limited overhead.
00	Does not provide fault tolerance. All data in a virtual drive is lost if any drive in that virtual drive fails. Disk striping writes data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. It involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size. RAID 00 is ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance.
10	Provides complete data redundancy using striping across spanned RAID 1 drive groups. RAID 10 works well for any environment that requires the 100 percent redundancy offered by mirrored drive groups. RAID 10 can sustain a drive failure in each mirrored drive group and maintain drive integrity.
50	Provides data redundancy using distributed parity across spanned RAID 5 drive groups. RAID 50 includes both parity and disk striping across multiple drives. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity data to recreate all missing information. RAID 50 can sustain one drive failure per RAID 5 drive group and still maintain data integrity.
60	Provides data redundancy using distributed parity across spanned RAID 6 drive groups. RAID 60 can sustain two drive failures per RAID 6 drive group and still maintain data integrity. It provides the highest level of protection against drive failures of all of the RAID levels. RAID 60 includes both parity and disk striping across multiple drives. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity data to recreate all missing information.

## 2.6.2 Maximizing Performance

A RAID disk subsystem improves I/O performance. The RAID drive group appears to the host computer as a single storage unit or as multiple virtual units. I/O is faster because drives can be accessed simultaneously. [Table 2.14](#) describes the performance for each RAID level.

**Table 2.14 RAID Levels and Performance**

<b>RAID Level</b>	<b>Performance</b>
0	RAID 0 (striping) offers excellent performance. RAID 0 breaks up data into smaller blocks and then writes a block to each drive in the drive group. Disk striping writes data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. It involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size from 8 KB to 1024 KB. These stripes are interleaved in a repeated sequential manner. Disk striping enhances performance because multiple drives are accessed simultaneously.
1	With RAID 1 (mirroring), each drive in the system must be duplicated, which requires more time and resources than striping. Performance is impaired during drive rebuilds.
5	<p>RAID 5 provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Use this RAID level for any application that requires high read request rates, but low write request rates, such as transaction processing applications, because each drive can read and write independently. Since each drive contains both data and parity, numerous writes can take place concurrently. In addition, robust caching algorithms and hardware based exclusive-or assist make RAID 5 performance exceptional in many different environments.</p> <p>Parity generation can slow the write process, making write performance significantly lower for RAID 5 than for RAID 0 or RAID 1. Drive performance is reduced when a drive is being rebuilt. Clustering can also reduce drive performance. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.</p>
6	RAID 6 works best when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, and high data transfer. It provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance. However, RAID 6 is not well suited to tasks requiring a lot of writes. A RAID 6 virtual drive has to generate two sets of parity data for each write operation, which results in a significant decrease in performance during writes. Drive performance is reduced during a drive rebuild. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.
00	RAID 00 (striping in a spanned drive group) offers excellent performance. RAID 00 breaks up data into smaller blocks and then writes a block to each drive in the drive groups. Disk striping writes data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. Striping involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size from 8 KB to 1024 KB. These stripes are interleaved in a repeated sequential manner. Disk striping enhances performance because multiple drives are accessed simultaneously.
10	RAID 10 works best for data storage that need the enhanced I/O performance of RAID 0 (striped drive groups), which provides high data transfer rates. Spanning increases the capacity of the virtual drive and improves performance by doubling the number of spindles. The system performance improves as the number of spans increases. (The maximum number of spans is eight.) As the storage space in the spans is filled, the system stripes data over fewer and fewer spans and RAID performance degrades to that of a RAID 1 or RAID 5 drive group.

RAID Level	Performance
50	RAID 50 works best when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, and high data transfer. It provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance. Spanning increases the capacity of the virtual drive and improves performance by doubling the number of spindles. The system performance improves as the number of spans increases. (The maximum number of spans is eight.) As the storage space in the spans is filled, the system stripes data over fewer and fewer spans and RAID performance degrades to that of a RAID 1 or RAID 5 drive group.
60	<p>RAID 60 works best when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, and high data transfer. It provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance. Spanning increases the capacity of the virtual drive and improves performance by doubling the number of spindles. The system performance improves as the number of spans increases. (The maximum number of spans is eight.) As the storage space in the spans is filled, the system stripes data over fewer and fewer spans and RAID performance degrades to that of a RAID 1 or RAID 6 drive group.</p> <p>RAID 60 is not well suited to tasks requiring a lot of writes. A RAID 60 virtual drive has to generate two sets of parity data for each write operation, which results in a significant decrease in performance during writes. Drive performance is reduced during a drive rebuild. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.</p>

## 2.6.3 Maximizing Storage Capacity

Storage capacity is an important factor when selecting a RAID level. There are several variables to consider. Striping alone (RAID 0) requires less storage space than mirrored data (RAID 1) or distributed parity (RAID 5 or RAID 6). RAID 5, which provides redundancy for one drive failure without duplicating the contents of entire drives, requires less space than RAID 1. [Table 2.15](#) explains the effects of the RAID levels on storage capacity.

**Table 2.15 RAID Levels and Capacity**

RAID Level	Capacity
0	RAID 0 (striping) involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size. The combined storage space is composed of stripes from each drive. RAID 0 provides maximum storage capacity for a given set of drives.
1	With RAID 1 (mirroring), data written to one drive is simultaneously written to another drive, which doubles the required data storage capacity. This is expensive because each drive in the system must be duplicated.

RAID Level	Capacity
5	RAID 5 provides redundancy for one drive failure without duplicating the contents of entire drives. RAID 5 breaks up data into smaller blocks, calculates parity by performing an exclusive-or on the blocks, then writes the blocks of data and parity to each drive in the drive group. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set.
6	RAID 6 provides redundancy for two drive failures without duplicating the contents of entire drives. However, it requires extra capacity because it uses two parity blocks per stripe. This makes RAID 6 more expensive to implement.
00	RAID 00 (striping in a spanned drive group) involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size. The combined storage space is composed of stripes from each drive. RAID 00 provides maximum storage capacity for a given set of drives.
10	RAID 10 requires twice as many drives as all other RAID levels except RAID 1. RAID 10 works well for medium-sized databases or any environment that requires a higher degree of fault tolerance and moderate to medium capacity. Disk spanning allows multiple drives to function like one big drive. Spanning overcomes lack of disk space and simplifies storage management by combining existing resources or adding relatively inexpensive resources.
50	RAID 50 requires two to four times as many parity drives as RAID 5. This RAID level works best when used with data that requires medium to large capacity.
60	RAID 60 provides redundancy for two drive failures in each RAID set without duplicating the contents of entire drives. However, it requires extra capacity because a RAID 60 virtual drive has to generate two sets of parity data for each write operation. This makes RAID 60 more expensive to implement.

---

## 2.7 RAID Availability

### 2.7.1 RAID Availability Concept

Data availability without downtime is essential for many types of data processing and storage systems. Businesses want to avoid the financial costs and customer frustration associated with failed servers. RAID helps you maintain data availability and avoid downtime for the servers that provide that data. RAID offers several features, such as spare drives and rebuilds, that you can use to fix any drive problems, while keeping the servers running and data available. The following subsections describe these features.



### 2.7.1.1 Spare Drives

You can use spare drives to replace failed or defective drives in a drive group. A replacement drive must be at least as large as the drive it replaces. Spare drives include hot swaps, hot spares, and cold swaps.

A hot swap is the manual substitution of a replacement unit in a disk subsystem for a defective one, where the substitution can be performed while the subsystem is running (performing its normal functions). The backplane and enclosure must support hot swap in order for the functionality to work.

Hot spare drives are drives that power up along with the RAID drives and operate in a standby state. If a drive used in a RAID virtual drive fails, a hot spare automatically takes its place and the data on the failed drive is rebuilt on the hot spare. Hot spares can be used for RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60.

**Note:** If a rebuild to a hot spare fails for any reason, the hot spare drive will be marked as "failed." If the source drive fails, both the source drive and the hot spare drive will be marked as "failed."

A cold swap requires that you power down the system before replacing a defective drive in a disk subsystem.

### 2.7.1.2 Rebuilding

If a drive fails in a drive group that is configured as a RAID 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60 virtual drive, you can recover the lost data by rebuilding the drive. If you have configured hot spares, the RAID controller automatically tries to use them to rebuild failed drives. Manual rebuild is necessary if no hot spares with enough capacity to rebuild the failed drives are available. You must insert a drive with enough storage into the subsystem before rebuilding the failed drive.

---

## 2.8 Configuration Planning

Factors to consider when planning a configuration are the number of drives the RAID controller can support, the purpose of the drive group, and the availability of spare drives.

Each type of data stored in the disk subsystem has a different frequency of read and write activity. If you know the data access requirements, you can more successfully determine a strategy for optimizing the disk subsystem capacity, availability, and performance.

Servers that support video on demand typically read the data often, but write data infrequently. Both the read and write operations tend to be long. Data stored on a general-purpose file server involves relatively short read and write operations with relatively small files.

## 2.8.1 Number of Drives

Your configuration planning for the SAS RAID controller depends in part on the number of drives that you want to use in a RAID drive group. The number of drives in a drive group determines the RAID levels that can be supported. Only one RAID level can be assigned to each virtual drive.

## 2.8.2 Drive Group Purpose

Important factors to consider when creating RAID drive groups include availability, performance, and capacity. Define the major purpose of the drive group by answering questions related to these factors, such as the following, which are followed by suggested RAID levels for each situation:

- Will this drive group increase the system storage capacity for general-purpose file and print servers? Use RAID 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60.
- Does this drive group support any software system that must be available 24 hours per day? Use RAID 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60.
- Will the information stored in this drive group contain large audio or video files that must be available on demand? Use RAID 0 or 00.
- Will this drive group contain data from an imaging system? Use RAID 0, 00, or 10.

Fill out [Table 2.16](#) to help you plan the drive group configuration. Rank the requirements for your drive group, such as storage space and data

redundancy, in order of importance, and then review the suggested RAID levels.

**Table 2.16 Factors to Consider for Drive Group Configuration**

<b>Requirement</b>	<b>Rank</b>	<b>Suggested RAID Level(s)</b>
Storage space		RAID 0, RAID 5, RAID 00
Data redundancy		RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, RAID 60
Drive performance and throughput		RAID 0, RAID 00, RAID 10
Hot spares (extra drives required)		RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, RAID 60



# Chapter 3

## WebBIOS Configuration Utility

---

This chapter describes the WebBIOS Configuration Utility (CU) and consists of the following sections:

- [Section 3.1, “Overview”](#)
  - [Section 3.2, “Starting the WebBIOS CU”](#)
  - [Section 3.3, “WebBIOS CU Main Screen Options”](#)
  - [Section 3.4, “Creating a Storage Configuration”](#)
  - [Section 3.5, “Viewing and Changing Device Properties”](#)
  - [Section 3.6, “Viewing System Event Information”](#)
  - [Section 3.7, “Managing Configurations”](#)
- 

### 3.1 Overview

The WebBIOS CU enables you to create and manage RAID configurations on LSI SAS controllers. Unlike the MegaRAID Storage Manager™ software, the WebBIOS CU resides in the SAS controller BIOS and operates independently of the operating system.

You can use the WebBIOS CU to do the following tasks:

- Create drive groups and virtual drives for storage configurations
- Display controller, virtual drive, drive, and battery backup unit (BBU) properties, and change parameters
- Delete virtual drives
- Migrate a storage configuration to a different RAID level
- Detect configuration mismatches
- Import a foreign configuration

- Scan devices connected to the controller
- Initialize virtual drives
- Check configurations for data consistency

The WebBIOS CU provides a configuration wizard to guide you through the configuration of virtual drives and drive groups.

---

## 3.2 Starting the WebBIOS CU

Follow these steps to start the WebBIOS CU and access the main screen.

1. When the host computer is booting, hold down the <Ctrl> key and press the <H> key when the following text appears on the screen:

```
Copyright© LSI Corporation  
Press <Ctrl><H> for WebBIOS
```

The Controller Selection screen appears.

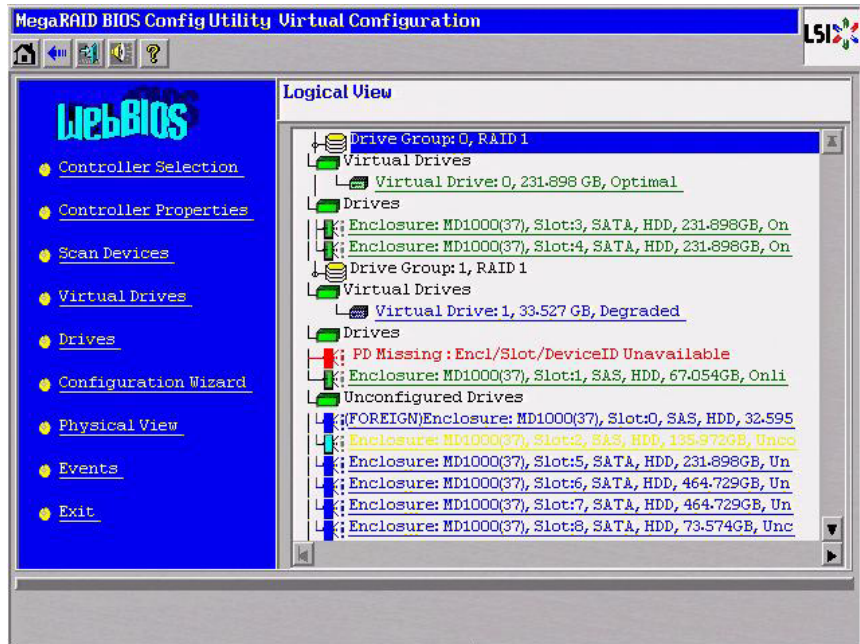
2. If the system has multiple SAS controllers, select a controller.
3. Click **Start** to continue.

The main WebBIOS CU screen appears.

### 3.3 WebBIOS CU Main Screen Options

Figure 3.1 shows the screen that appears when you start the WebBIOS CU and select a controller.

Figure 3.1 WebBIOS CU Main Screen



In the right frame, the screen shows the virtual drives configured on the controller, and the drives that are connected to the controller. In addition, the screen identifies drives that are foreign or missing.

**Note:** In the list of virtual drives, the drive nodes are sorted based on the order in which you added the drives to the drive group, rather than the physical slot order that displays in the physical trees.

**Note:** The minimum screen resolution for WebBIOS is 640x480.

To toggle between the physical view and logical view of the storage devices connected to the controller, click **Physical View** or **Logical View**






in the menu on the left. When the physical view screen appears, it shows the drive groups that are configured on this controller.

For drives in an enclosure, the screen shows the following drive information:

- Enclosure
- Slot
- Interface type (such as SAS or SATA)
- Drive type (HDD or SSD)
- Drive size
- Drive status (such as **Online** or **Unconfigured Good**)

The toolbar at the top of the WebBIOS CU has the following buttons, as listed in [Table 3.1](#).

**Table 3.1 WebBIOS CU Toolbar Icons**

Icon	Description
	Click this icon to return to the main screen from any other WebBIOS CU screen.
	Click this icon to return to the previous screen that you were viewing.
	Click this icon to exit the WebBIOS CU program.
	Click this icon to turn off the sound on the onboard controller alarm.
	Click this icon to display information about the WebBIOS CU version, browser version, and HTML interface engine.

Here is a description of the options listed on the left of the main WebBIOS CU screen:



- **Controller Selection:** Select this option to view the Controller Selection screen, where you can select a different SAS controller. You can then view information about the controller and the devices connected to it, or create a new configuration on the controller.
- **Controller Properties:** Select this option to view the properties of the currently selected SAS controller. For more information, see [Section 3.5.1, “Viewing and Changing Controller Properties.”](#)
- **Scan Devices:** Select this option to have the WebBIOS CU re-scan the physical and virtual drives for any changes in the drive status or the physical configuration. The WebBIOS CU displays the results of the scan in the physical and virtual drive descriptions.
- **Virtual Drives:** Select this option to view the Virtual Drives screen, where you can change and view virtual drive properties, delete virtual drives, initialize drives, and perform other tasks. For more information, see [Section 3.5.2, “Viewing and Changing Virtual Drive Properties.”](#)
- **Drives:** Select this option to view the Drives screen, where you can view drive properties, create hot spares, and perform other tasks. For more information, see [Section 3.5.3, “Viewing Drive Properties.”](#)
- **Configuration Wizard:** Select this option to start the Configuration Wizard and create a new storage configuration, clear a configuration, or add a configuration. For more information, see [Section 3.4, “Creating a Storage Configuration.”](#)
- **Physical View/Logical View:** Select this option to toggle between the Physical View and Logical View screens.
- **Events:** Select this option to view system events in the Event Information screen. For more information, see [Section 3.6, “Viewing System Event Information.”](#)
- **Exit:** Select this option to exit the WebBIOS CU and continue with system boot.

---

## 3.4 Creating a Storage Configuration

This section explains how to use the WebBIOS CU Configuration Wizard to configure RAID drive groups and virtual drives. The following

subsections explain how to use the Configuration Wizard to create storage configurations:

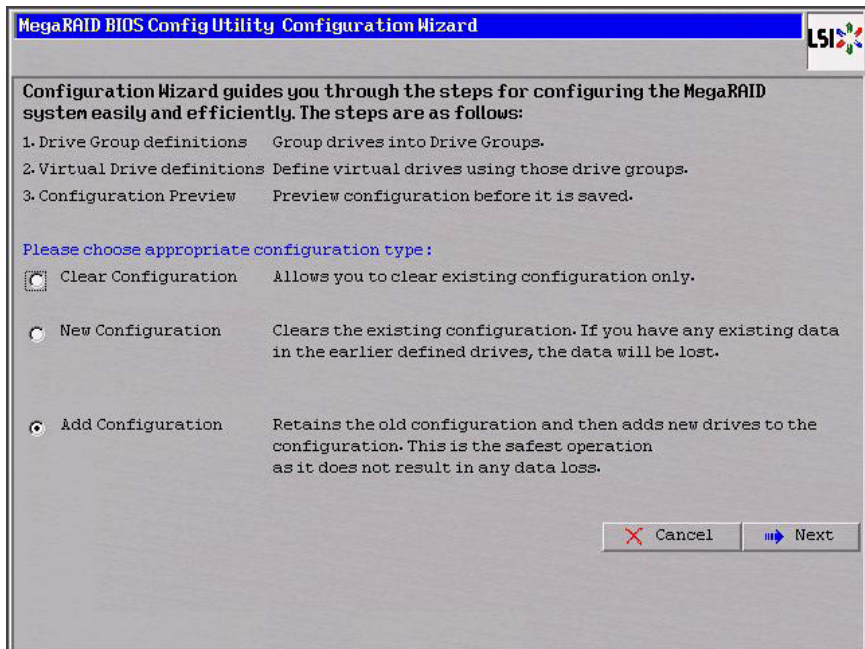
- [Section 3.4.1, “Selecting the Configuration with the Configuration Wizard”](#)
- [Section 3.4.2, “Using Automatic Configuration”](#)
- [Section 3.4.3, “Using Manual Configuration”](#)

### 3.4.1 Selecting the Configuration with the Configuration Wizard

Follow these steps to start the Configuration Wizard, and select a configuration option and mode:

1. Click **Configuration Wizard** on the WebBIOS main screen.  
The first Configuration Wizard screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.2](#).

**Figure 3.2 WebBIOS Configuration Wizard Screen**



2. Select a configuration option.

**Caution:** If you choose the first or second option, all existing data in the configuration will be deleted. Make a backup of any data that you want to keep before you choose an option.

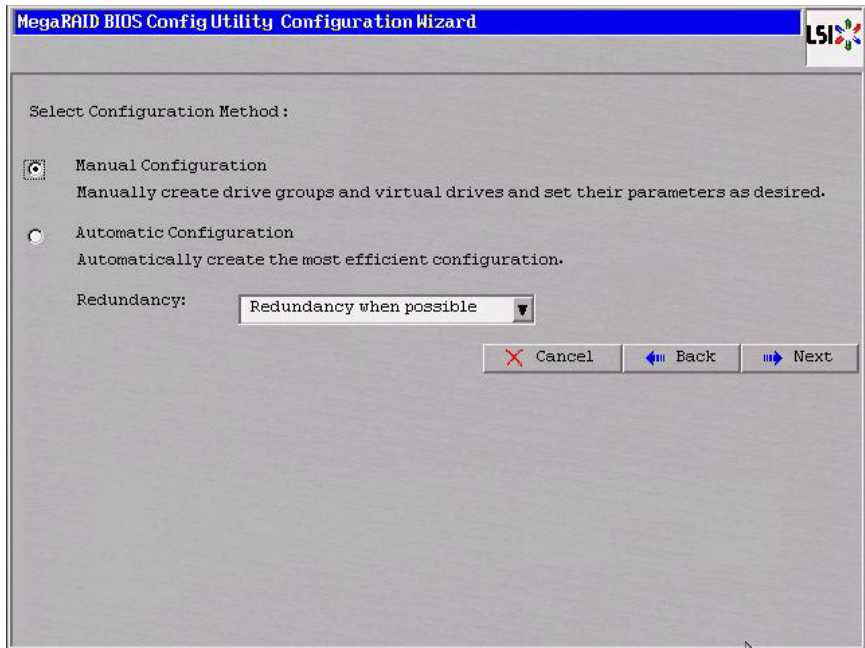
- **Clear Configuration:** Clears the existing configuration.
- **New Configuration:** Clears the existing configuration and lets you create a new configuration.
- **Add Configuration:** Retains the existing storage configuration and adds new drives to it (this does not cause any data loss).

3. Click **Next**.

A dialog box warns that you will lose data if you select Clear Configuration or New Configuration.

The WebBIOS Configuration Method screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.3](#).

**Figure 3.3 WebBIOS Configuration Method Screen**



4. On this screen, select a configuration mode:
  - **Manual Configuration:** Allows you to control all attributes of the new storage configuration as you create drive groups and virtual drives, and set their parameters.
  - **Automatic Configuration:** Automatically creates an optimal RAID configuration.
5. If you select Automatic Configuration, you can choose whether to create a redundant RAID drive group or a non-redundant RAID 0 drive group. Select one of the following options in the Redundancy field:
  - **Redundancy when possible**
  - **No redundancy**
6. Click **Next** to continue.

If you select the Automatic Configuration option, continue with [Section 3.4.2, “Using Automatic Configuration.”](#) If you select Manual Configuration, continue with [Section 3.4.3, “Using Manual Configuration.”](#)

## 3.4.2 Using Automatic Configuration

Follow these instructions to create a configuration with automatic configuration, either with or without redundancy:

1. When WebBIOS displays the proposed new configuration, review the information on the screen, and click **Accept** to accept it. (Or click **Back** to go back and change the configuration.)
  - **RAID 0:** If you select **Automatic Configuration** and **No Redundancy**, WebBIOS creates a RAID 0 configuration.
  - **RAID 1:** If you select **Automatic Configuration** and **Redundancy when possible**, and only two drives are available, WebBIOS creates a RAID 1 configuration.
  - **RAID 5:** If you select **Automatic Configuration** and **Redundancy when possible**, and three or more drives are available, WebBIOS creates a RAID 5 configuration.
  - **RAID 6:** If you select **Automatic Configuration** and **Redundancy when possible**, and the RAID 6 option is enabled, and three or more drives are available, WebBIOS creates a RAID 6 configuration.

2. Click **Yes** when you are prompted to save the configuration.
3. Click **Yes** when you are prompted to initialize the new virtual drive(s).  
WebBIOS CU begins a background initialization of the virtual drives.

### 3.4.3 Using Manual Configuration

The following subsections contain the procedures for creating RAID drive groups for RAID levels 0, 1, 5, 6, 00, 10, 50, and 60:

- [Section 3.4.3.1, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 0”](#)
- [Section 3.4.3.2, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 1”](#)
- [Section 3.4.3.3, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 5”](#)
- [Section 3.4.3.4, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 6”](#)
- [Section 3.4.3.5, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 00”](#)
- [Section 3.4.3.6, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 10”](#)
- [Section 3.4.3.7, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 50”](#)
- [Section 3.4.3.8, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 60”](#)

#### 3.4.3.1 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 0

RAID 0 provides drive striping across all drives in the RAID drive group. RAID 0 does not provide any data redundancy but does offer excellent performance. RAID 0 is ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance. RAID 0 also denotes an independent or single drive.

**Note:** RAID level 0 is not fault-tolerant. If a drive in a RAID 0 drive group fails, the whole virtual drive (all drives associated with the virtual drive) fails.

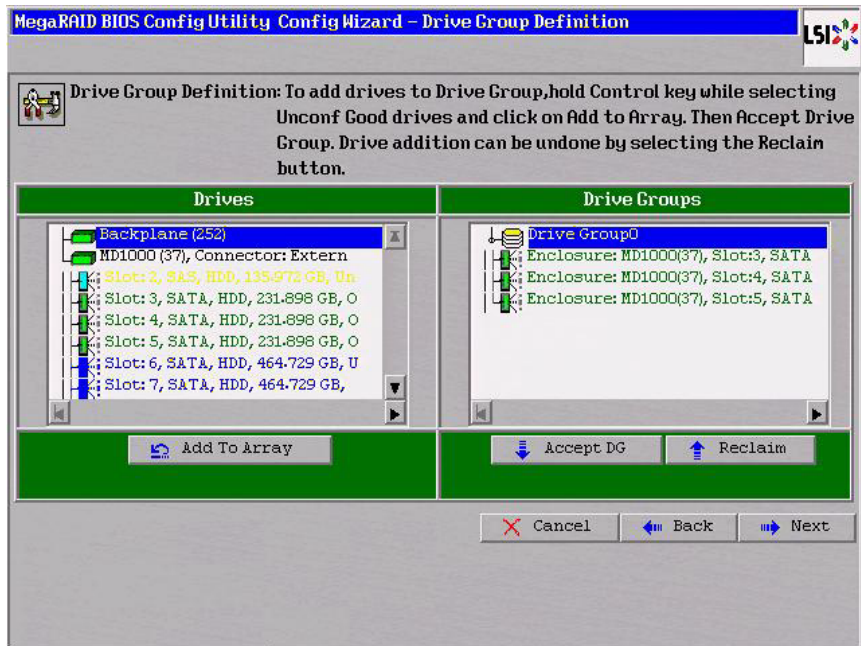
When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the drive group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting two or more ready drives in the Drives panel on the left until you have selected all desired drives for the drive group.

2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 3.4](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

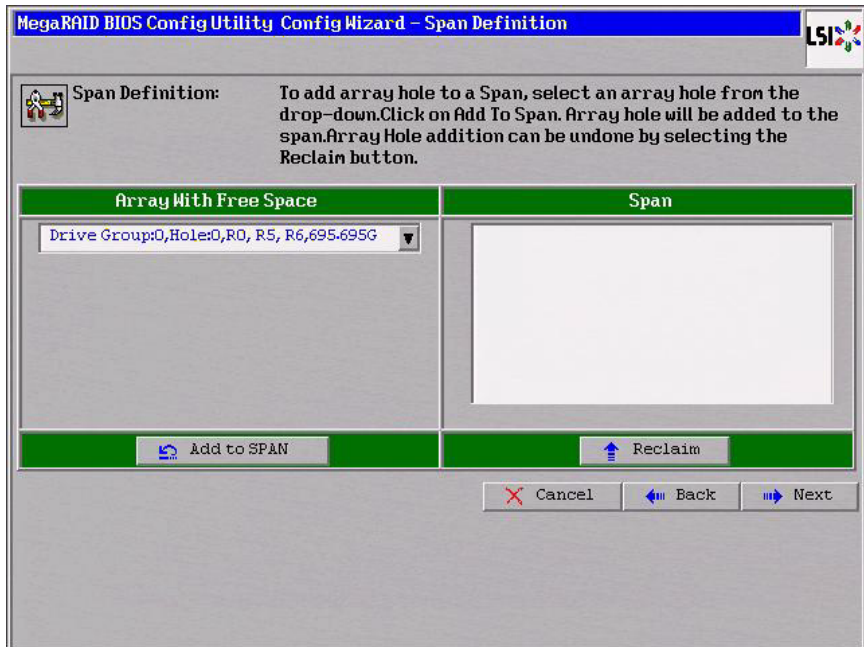
**Figure 3.4 WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen**



3. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive group, click **Accept DG**.
4. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.5](#). This screen lists the possible RAID levels for the drive group. Use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.

**Figure 3.5 WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**



5. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 0.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *RW:* Allow read/write access. This is the default.

- ◇ *Read Only*: Allow read-only access.
- ◇ *Blocked*: Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy**: Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *Normal*: This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Ahead*: This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.
  - ◇ *Adaptive*: When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).
- **Write Policy**: Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *WBack*: In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.
  - ◇ *WThru*: In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Bad BBU*: Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

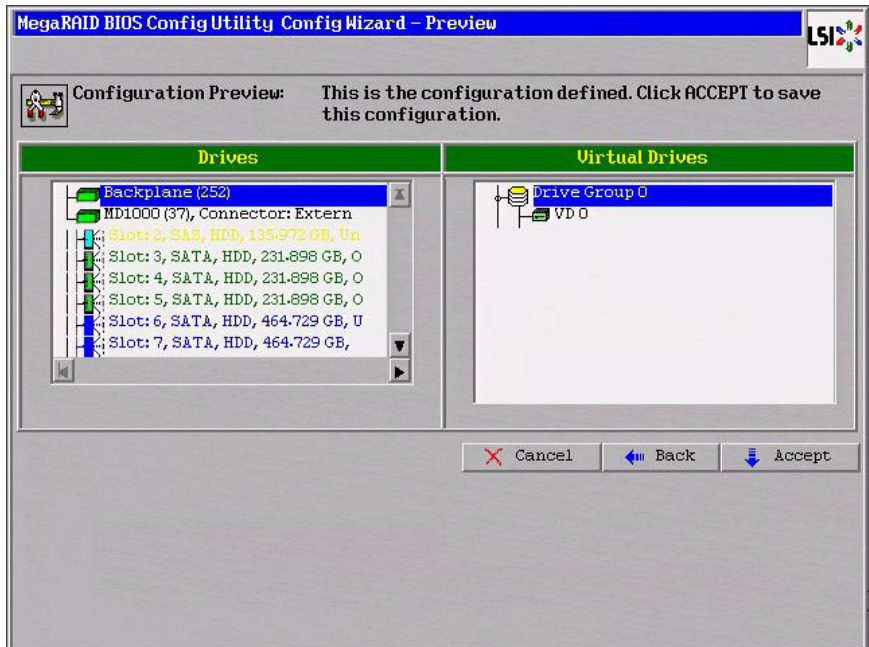
**Caution:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.



- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.
    - ◇ *Direct:* In direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Cached:* In cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.
  - **Drive Cache:** Specify the drive cache policy:
    - ◇ *Enable:* Enable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *Disable:* Disable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This is the default.
  - **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:
    - ◇ *No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Yes:* Select *Yes* if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.
  - **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 0 shown in the Configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
6. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
  7. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.
 

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.6](#).

**Figure 3.6 RAID 0 Configuration Preview**



8. Check the information in the configuration preview.
9. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
10. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

### 3.4.3.2 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 1

In RAID 1, the RAID controller duplicates all data from one drive to a second drive. RAID 1 provides complete data redundancy, but at the cost of doubling the required data storage capacity. It is appropriate for small databases or any other environment that requires fault tolerance but small capacity.

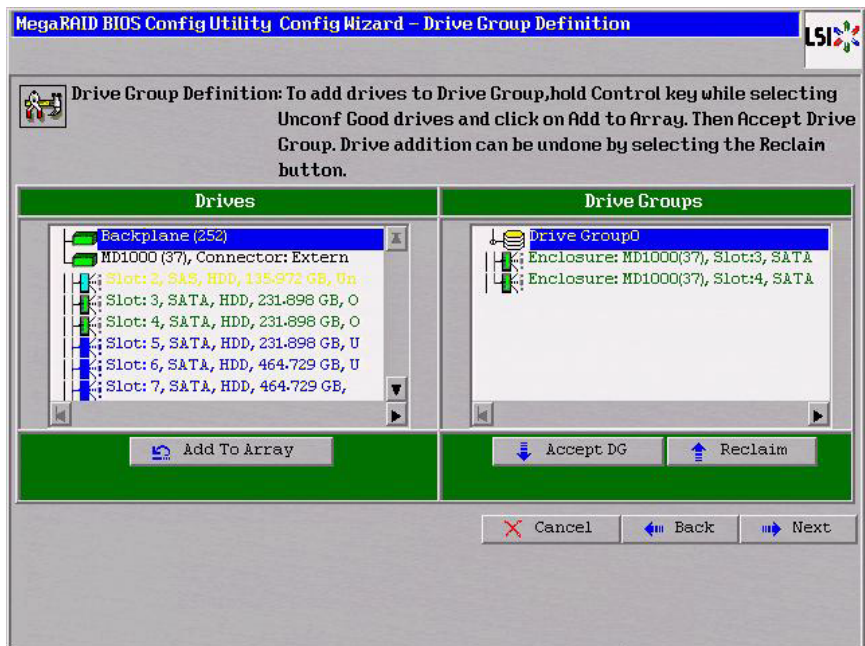
When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while you select two ready drives in the Drives panel on the left. You must select an even number of drives.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 3.7](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

**Note:** A RAID 1 virtual drive can contain up to 16 drive groups and 32 drives in a single span. (Other factors, such as the type of controller, can limit the number of drives.) You must use two drives in each RAID 1 drive group in the span.

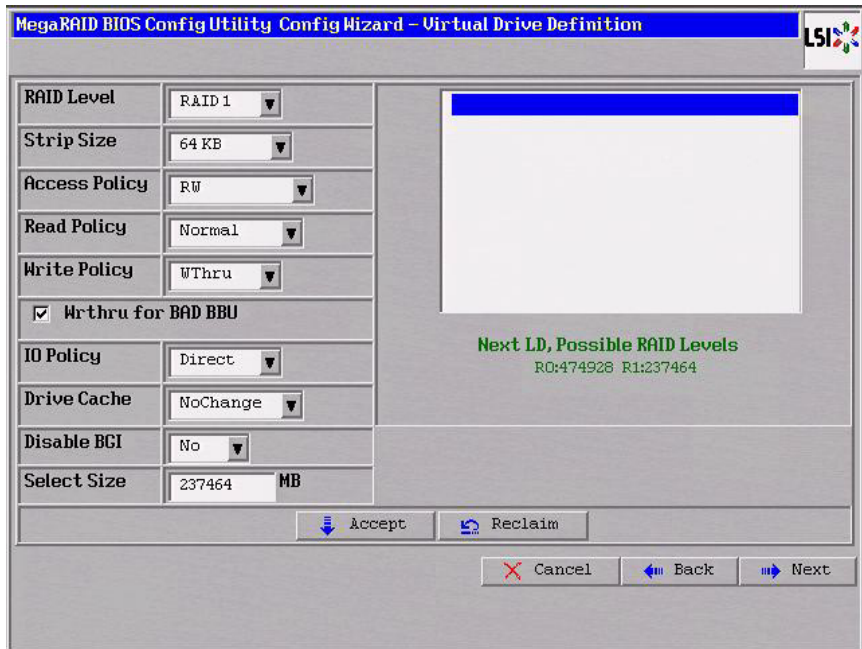
**Figure 3.7 WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen**



3. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive group, click **Accept DG**.
4. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.8](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.

**Figure 3.8 WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**



5. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 1.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.

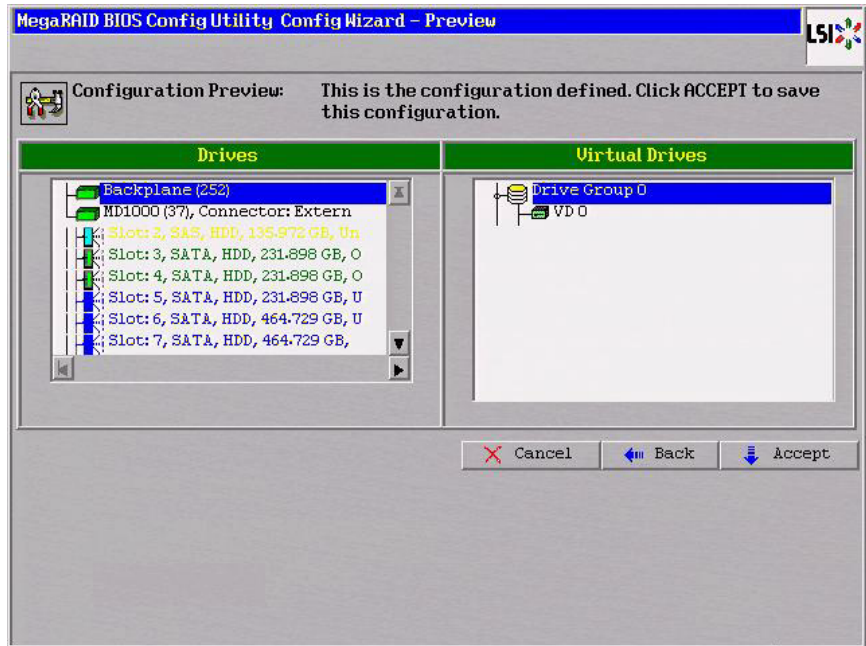
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *RW:* Allow read/write access. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Read Only:* Allow read-only access.
  - ◇ *Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.
  - ◇ *Adaptive:* When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).
- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *WBack:* In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.
  - ◇ *WThru:* In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Bad BBU:* Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

**Caution:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power

supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.
    - ◇ *Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.
  - **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:
    - ◇ *Enable:* Enable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *Disable:* Disable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This drive policy is the default.
  - **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:
    - ◇ *No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Yes:* Select **Yes** if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.
  - **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive(s) in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 1 shown in the Configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
6. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
  7. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.
- The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.9](#).

**Figure 3.9 RAID 1 Configuration Preview**



8. Check the information in the configuration preview.
9. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
10. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

### 3.4.3.3 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 5

RAID 5 uses drive striping at the block level and parity. In RAID 5, the parity information is written to all drives. It is best suited for networks that perform a lot of small input/output (I/O) transactions simultaneously. RAID 5 provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. It also provides redundancy with lowest loss of capacity.

RAID 5 provides high data throughput. RAID 5 is useful for transaction processing applications because each drive can read and write

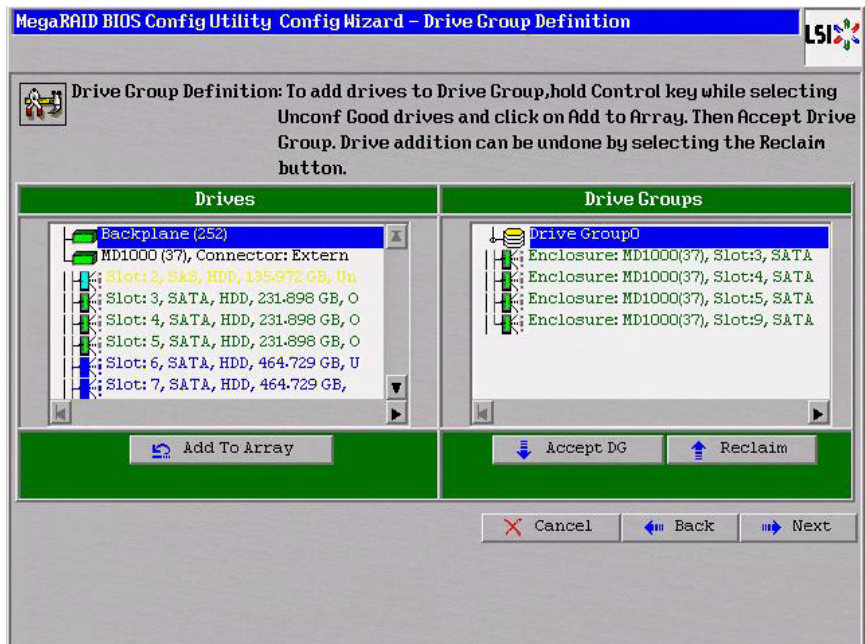
independently. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity drive to recreate all missing information. You can use RAID 5 for office automation and online customer service that require fault tolerance. In addition, RAID 5 is good for any application that has high read request rates but low write request rates.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while you select at least three ready drives in the Physical Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 3.10](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

**Figure 3.10 WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen**



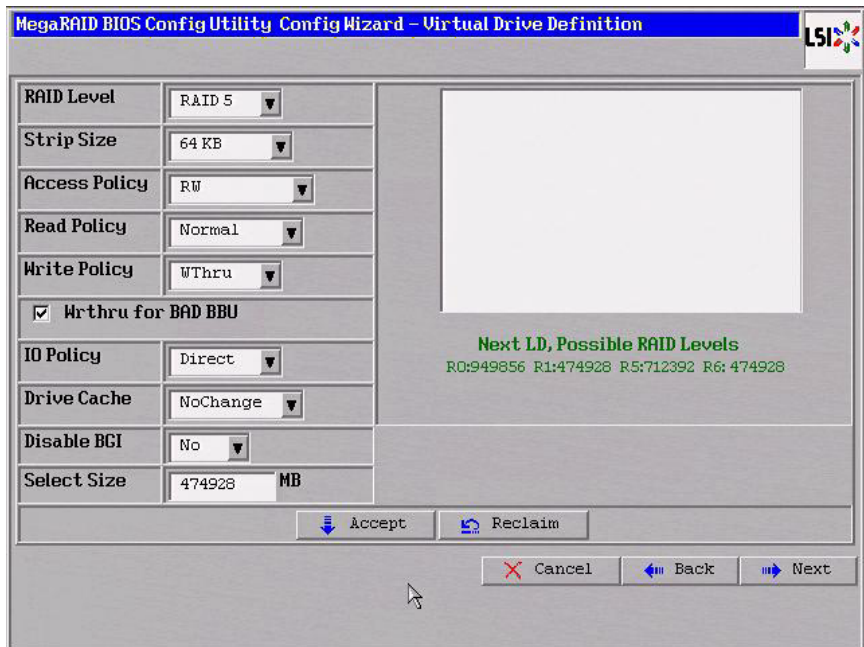
3. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive group, click **Accept DG**.



4. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.11](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.

**Figure 3.11 WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**



5. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 5.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read

performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.

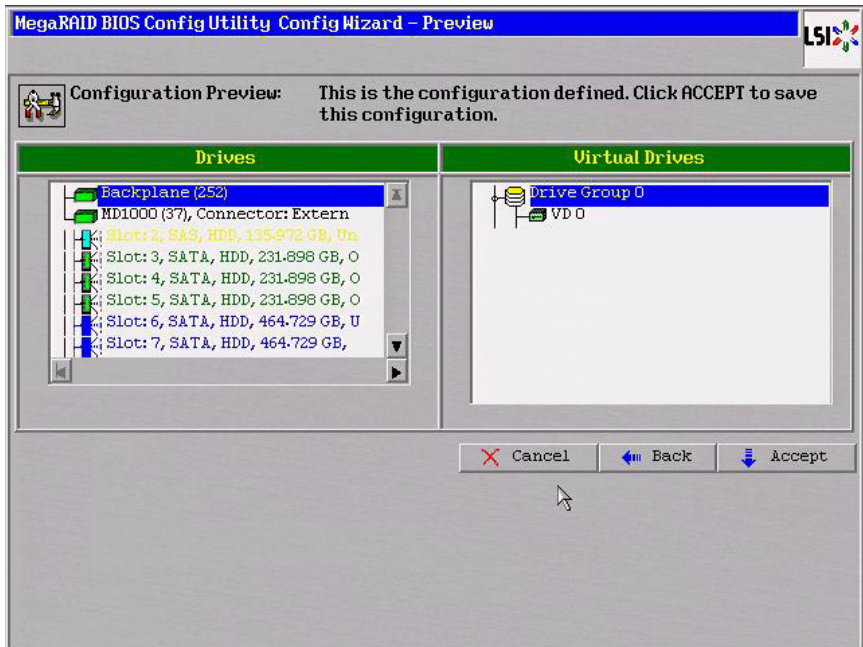
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *RW:* Allow read/write access. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Read Only:* Allow read-only access.
  - ◇ *Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.
  - ◇ *Adaptive:* When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).
- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *WBack:* In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.
  - ◇ *WThru:* In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Bad BBU:* Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

**Caution:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.
    - ◇ *Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.
  - **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:
    - ◇ *Enable:* Enable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *Disable:* Disable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This drive policy is the default.
  - **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:
    - ◇ *No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Yes:* Select *Yes* if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.
  - **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 5 shown in the Configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
6. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
  7. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.12](#).

Figure 3.12 RAID 5 Configuration Preview



8. Check the information in the configuration preview.
9. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to end the operation and return to the WebBIOS main menu, or click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
10. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

#### 3.4.3.4 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 6

RAID 6 is similar to RAID 5 (drive striping and distributed parity), except that instead of one parity block per stripe, there are two. With two independent parity blocks, RAID 6 can survive the loss of two drives in a virtual drive without losing data. Use RAID 6 for data that requires a very high level of protection from loss.

RAID 6 is best suited for networks that perform a lot of small input/output (I/O) transactions simultaneously. It provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments.

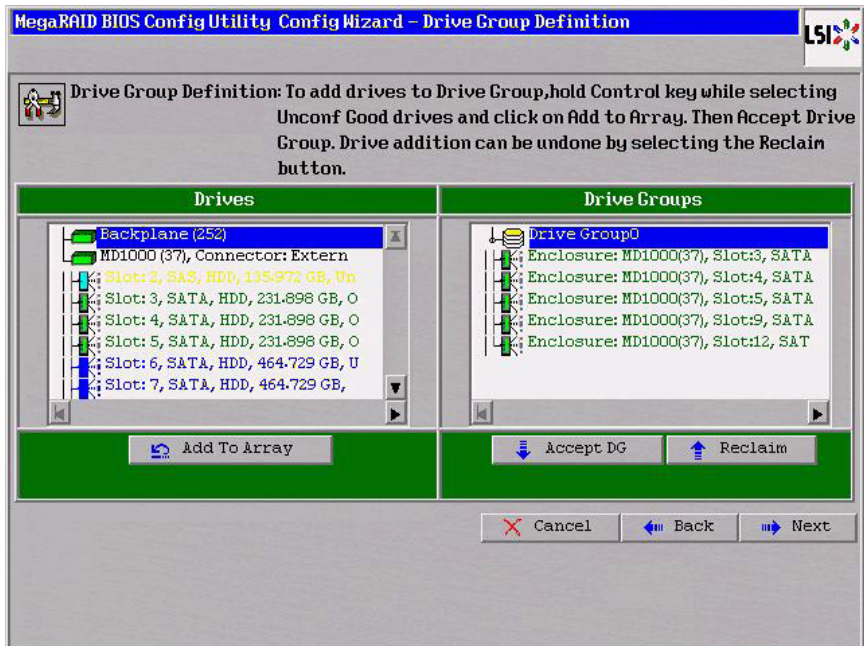
In the case of a failure of one drive or two drives in a virtual drive, the RAID controller uses the parity blocks to recreate all of the missing information. If two drives in a RAID 6 virtual drive fail, two drive rebuilds are required, one for each drive. These rebuilds do not occur at the same time. The controller rebuilds one failed drive, and then the other failed drive.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the drive Group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting at least three ready drives in the Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 3.10](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

Figure 3.13 WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen

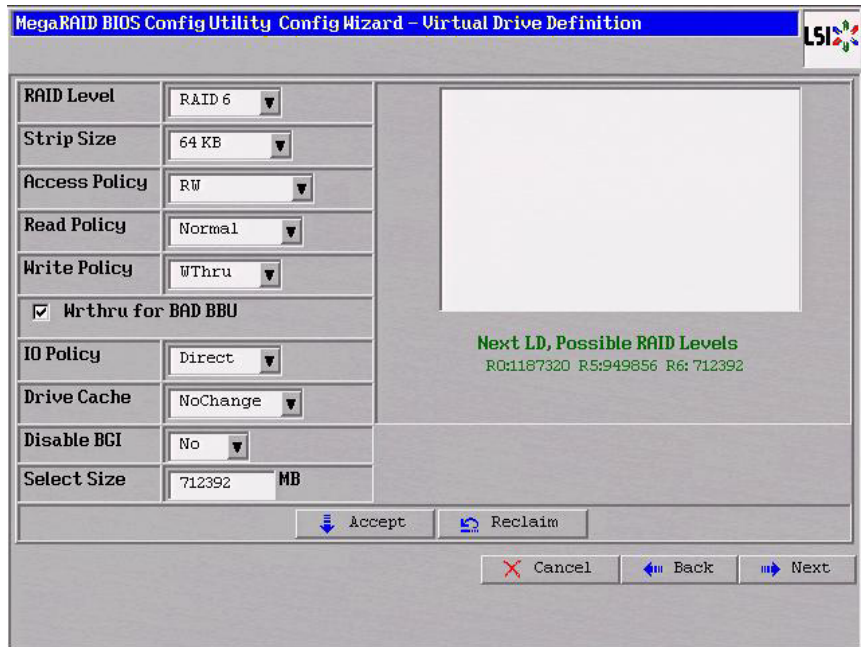


3. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive group, click **Accept DG** for each.

4. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.14](#). Use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.

**Figure 3.14 WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**



5. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 6.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.

**Note:** WebBIOS does not allow you to select 8 Kbytes as the stripe size when you create a RAID 6 drive group with three drives.

- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *RW:* Allow read/write access. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Read Only:* Allow read-only access.
  - ◇ *Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.
  - ◇ *Adaptive:* When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).
- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *WBack:* In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.
  - ◇ *WThru:* In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Bad BBU:* Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

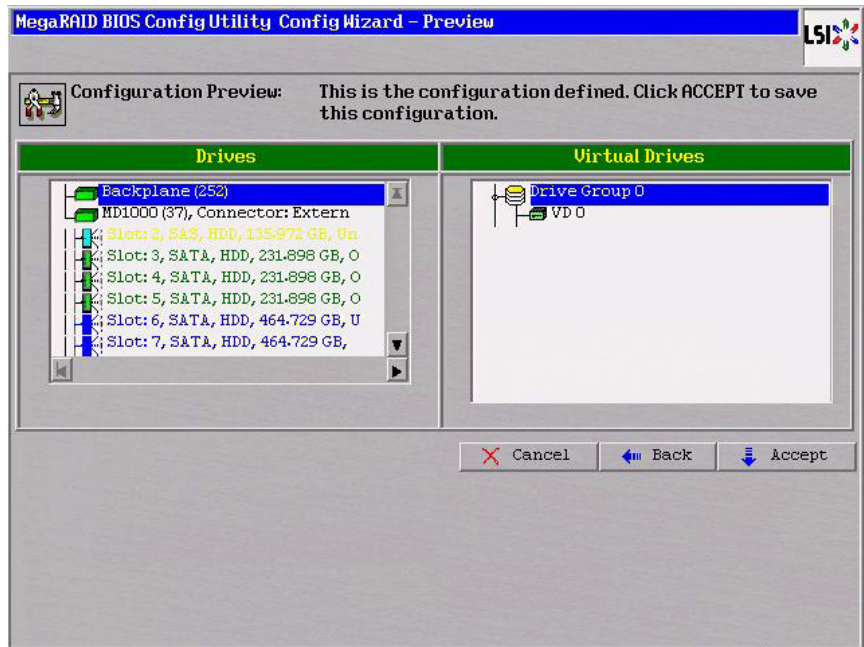
**Caution:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power



supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.
    - ◇ *Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.
  - **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:
    - ◇ *Enable:* Enable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *Disable:* Disable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This drive policy is the default.
  - **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:
    - ◇ *No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Yes:* Select **Yes** if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.
  - **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 6 shown in the Configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
6. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
  7. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.
- The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.12](#).

**Figure 3.15 RAID 6 Configuration Preview**



8. Check the information in the configuration preview.
9. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
10. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

### 3.4.3.5 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 00

A RAID 00 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of RAID 0 drive groups. It breaks up data into smaller blocks and then stripes the blocks of data to RAID 00 drive groups. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is 64 Kbytes.

RAID 00 does not provide any data redundancy but does offer excellent performance. RAID 00 is ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears.

You use the Disk Group Definition screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while you select ready drives in the Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right.

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

3. Click **Accept DG** to create a RAID 0 drive group.

An icon for the next drive group appears in the right panel.

4. Hold <Ctrl> while you select more ready drives in the Drives panel to create a second RAID 0 drive group.

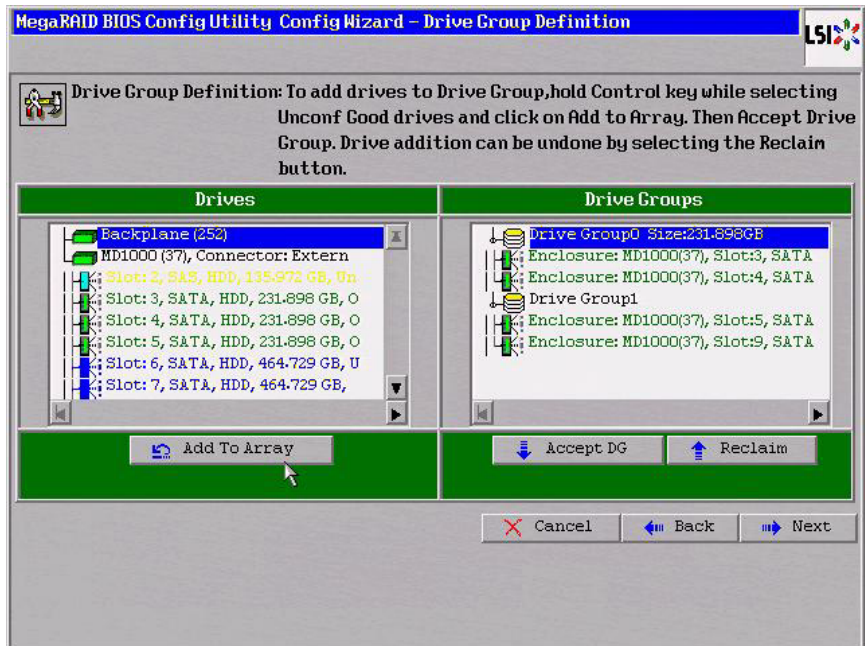
5. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a second drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel, as shown in [Figure 3.20](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

**Note:** RAID 00 supports a maximum of eight spans, with a maximum of 32 drives per span. (Other factors, such as the type of controller, can limit the number of drives.)

6. Click **Accept DG** to create a RAID 0 drive group.

Figure 3.16 WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen

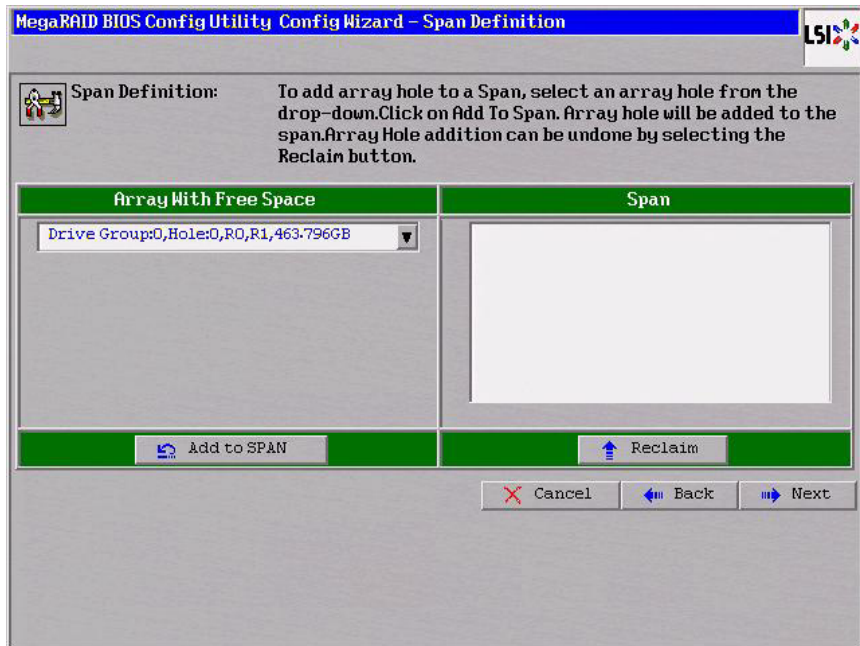


7. Repeat [step 4](#) through [step 6](#) until you have selected all the drives you want for the drive groups.
8. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive groups, select each drive group and then click **Accept DG** for each selection.
9. Click **Next**.

The Span Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.21](#).

This screen shows the drive group holes that you can select to add to a span.

**Figure 3.17 WebBIOS Span Definition Screen**



10. Under the heading **Array With Free Space**, hold <Ctrl> while you select a drive group, and then click **Add to SPAN**.

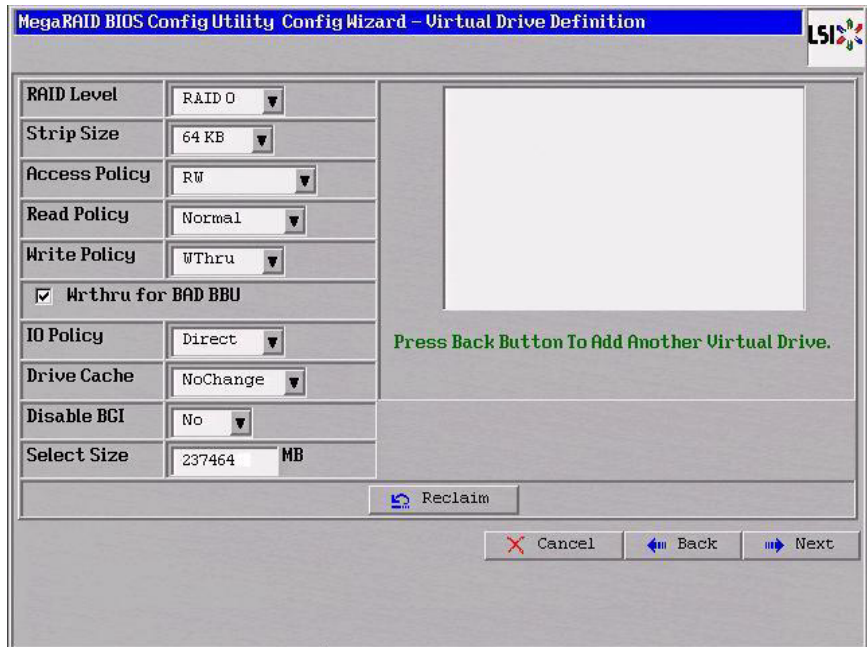
The drive group you select appears in the right frame under the heading **Span**.

11. Hold <Ctrl> while you select a second drive group, and then click **Add to SPAN**.
12. Repeat [step 10](#) until you have selected all of the drive groups that you want.
13. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.22](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.

14. Hold <Ctrl> while you select drive groups in the Configuration panel on the right.

**Figure 3.18 WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**



15. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 0.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *RW*: Allow read/write access.

- ◇ *Read Only*: Allow read-only access. This type of access is the default.
- ◇ *Blocked*: Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy**: Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *Normal*: This option disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Ahead*: This option enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.
  - ◇ *Adaptive*: When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).
- **Write Policy**: Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *WBack*: In Writeback mode, the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.
  - ◇ *WThru*: In Writethrough mode, the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Bad BBU*: Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

**Caution:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. To protect the entire system, LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS). If you do not use a

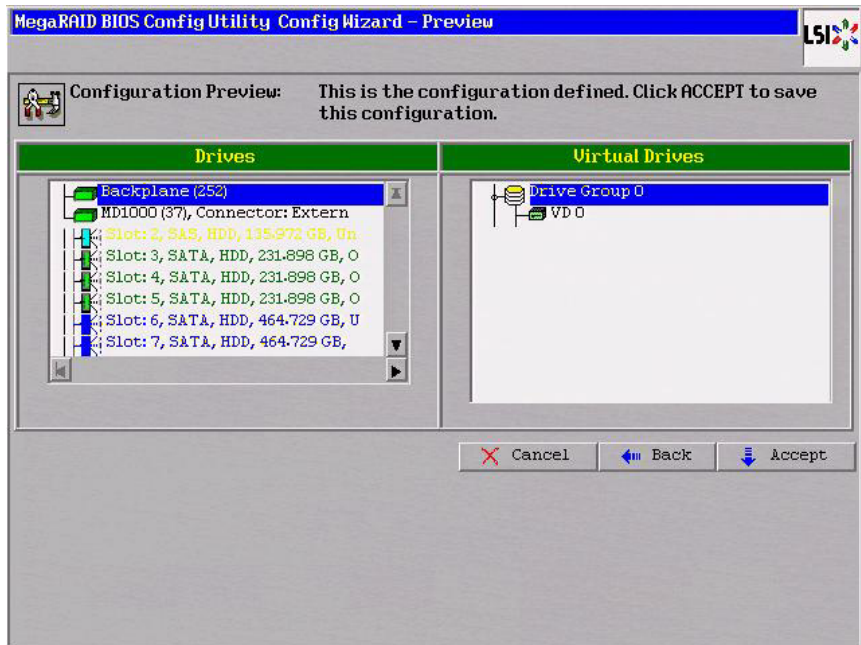
battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. The policy does not affect the read ahead cache.
    - ◇ *Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, the block comes from cache memory. This setting is the default.
    - ◇ *Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.
  - **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:
    - ◇ *Enable:* Enable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *Disable:* Disable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This setting is the default.
  - **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:
    - ◇ *No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This setting is the default.
    - ◇ *Yes:* Select Yes if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.
  - **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 00 shown in the Configuration Panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
16. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
17. When you are finished defining virtual drives, click **Next**.

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.23](#).



**Figure 3.19 RAID 00 Configuration Preview**



18. Check the information in the configuration preview.
19. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to end the operation and return to the WebBIOS main menu, or click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
20. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

### 3.4.3.6 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 10

RAID 10, a combination of RAID 1 and RAID 0, has mirrored drives. It breaks up data into smaller blocks, then stripes the blocks of data to each RAID 1 drive group. Each RAID 1 drive group then duplicates its data to its other drive. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is 64 Kbytes. RAID 10 can sustain one drive failure in each drive group while maintaining data integrity.

RAID 10 provides both high data transfer rates and complete data redundancy. It works best for data storage that must have 100 percent redundancy of RAID 1 (mirrored drive groups) and that also needs the enhanced I/O performance of RAID 0 (striped drive groups); it works well for medium-sized databases or any environment that requires a higher degree of fault tolerance and moderate to medium capacity.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears.

You use the Drive Group Definition screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting two ready drives in the Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed two-drive drive group configuration in the Drive Groups panel on the right.

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

3. Click **Accept DG** to create a RAID 1 drive group.

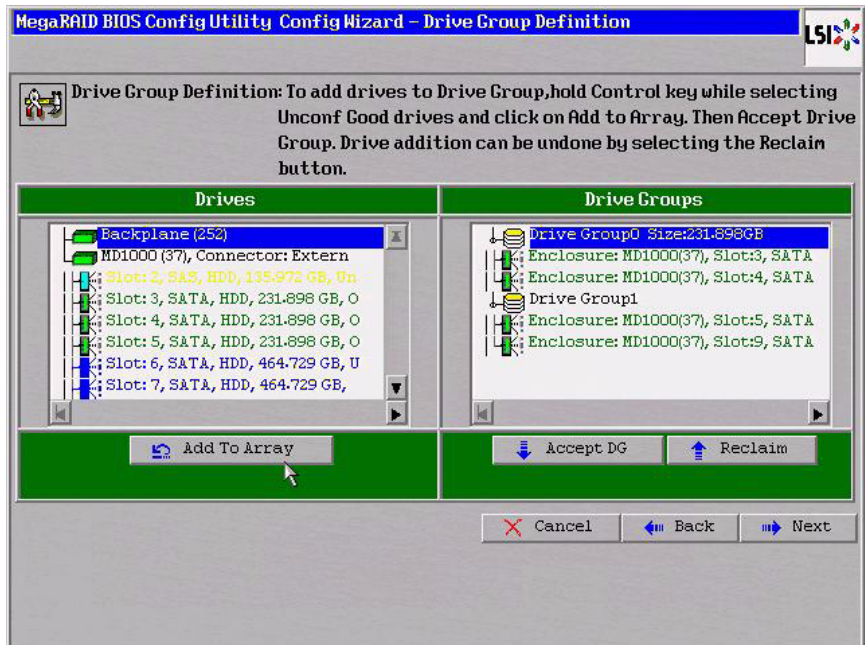
An icon for the next drive group displays in the right panel.

4. Click on the icon for the next drive group to select it.
5. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting two more ready drives in the Drives panel to create a second RAID 1 drive group with two drives.
6. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a second two-drive drive group configuration in the Drive Groups panel, as shown in [Figure 3.20](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

**Note:** RAID 10 supports a maximum of eight spans, with a maximum of 32 drives per span. (Other factors, such as the type of controller, can limit the number of drives.) You must use an even number of drives in each RAID 10 drive group in the span.

Figure 3.20 WebBIOS Drive Group Definition Screen

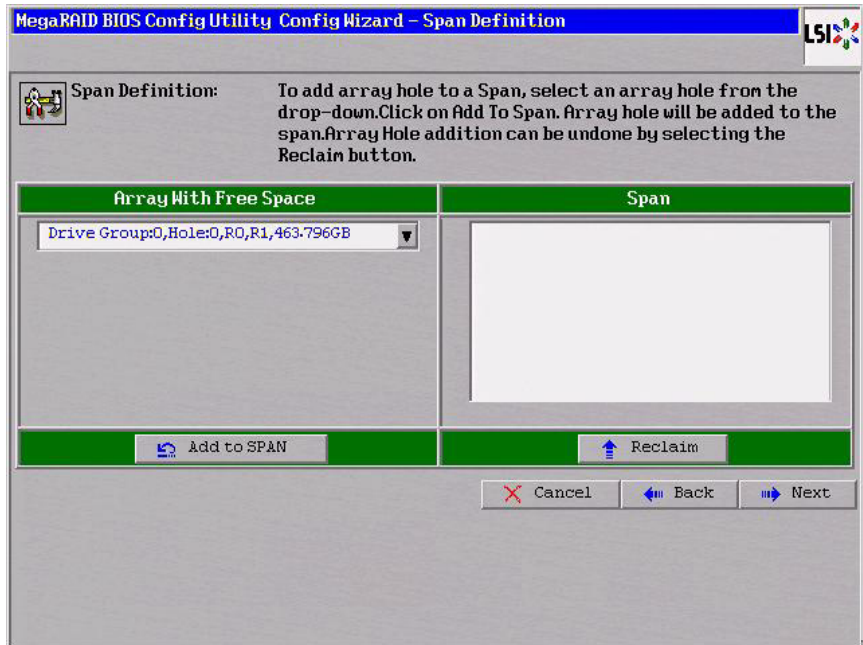


7. Repeat [step 4](#) to [step 6](#) until you have selected all the drives you want for the drive groups.
8. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive groups, select each drive group and click **Accept DG** for each.
9. Click **Next**.

The Span Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.21](#).

This screen displays the drive group holes you can select to add to a span.

**Figure 3.21 WebBIOS Span Definition Screen**



10. Under the heading **Array With Free Space**, hold <Ctrl> while you select a drive group with two drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.

The drive group you select displays in the right frame under the heading **Span**.

11. Hold <Ctrl> while you select a second drive group with two drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.

Both drive groups display in the right frame under **Span**.

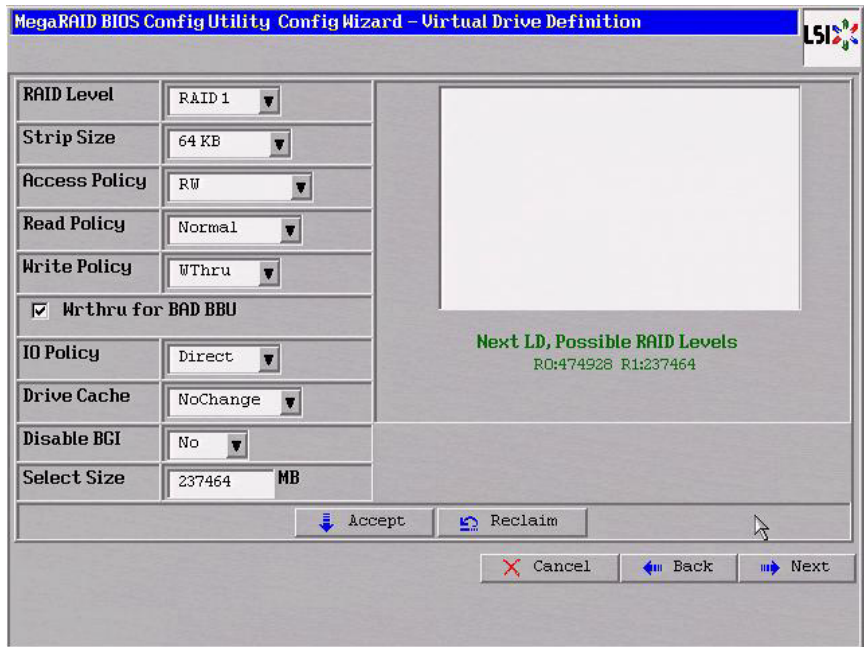
12. If there are additional drive groups with two drives each, you can add them to the virtual drive.

13. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.22](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drives.

14. Hold <Ctrl> while you select two drive groups with two drives in the Configuration panel on the right.

**Figure 3.22 WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**



**Note:** The WebBIOS Configuration Utility shows the maximum available capacity while creating the RAID 10 drive group. In version 1.03 of the utility, the maximum size of the RAID 10 drive group is the sum total of the two RAID 1 drive groups. In version 1.1, the maximum size is the size of the smaller drive group multiplied by two.

15. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 10.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read

performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.

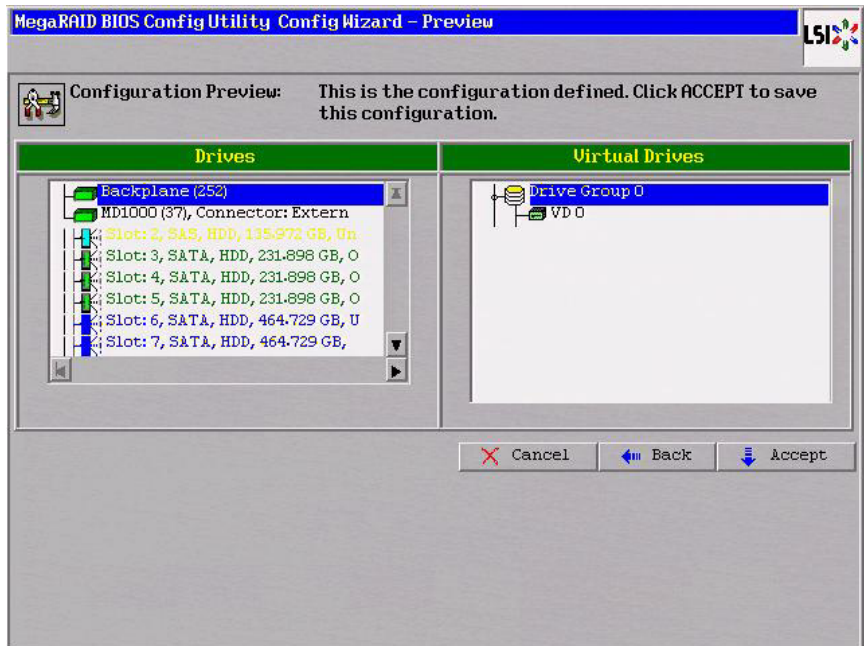
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *RW:* Allow read/write access.
  - ◇ *Read Only:* Allow read-only access. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Blocked:* Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *Normal:* This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Ahead:* This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.
  - ◇ *Adaptive:* When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).
- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *WBack:* In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.
  - ◇ *WThru:* In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Bad BBU:* Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

**Caution:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.
    - ◇ *Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.
  - **Drive Policy:** Specify the drive cache policy:
    - ◇ *Enable:* Enable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *Disable:* Disable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This drive policy is the default.
  - **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:
    - ◇ *No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Yes:* Select *Yes* if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.
  - **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 10 shown in the configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
16. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
17. When you are finished defining virtual drives, click **Next** .

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.23](#).

**Figure 3.23 RAID 10 Configuration Preview**



18. Check the information in the configuration preview.
19. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to end the operation and return to the WebBIOS main menu, or click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
20. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

### 3.4.3.7 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 50

RAID 50 provides the features of both RAID 0 and RAID 5. RAID 50 uses both distributed parity and drive striping across multiple drive groups. It provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance. It is best implemented on two RAID 5 drive groups with data striped across both drive groups. Though multiple drive failures can be tolerated, only one drive failure can be tolerated in each RAID 5 level drive group.



RAID 50 is appropriate when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfer, and medium to large capacity.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive group.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting at least three ready drives in the Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right.

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

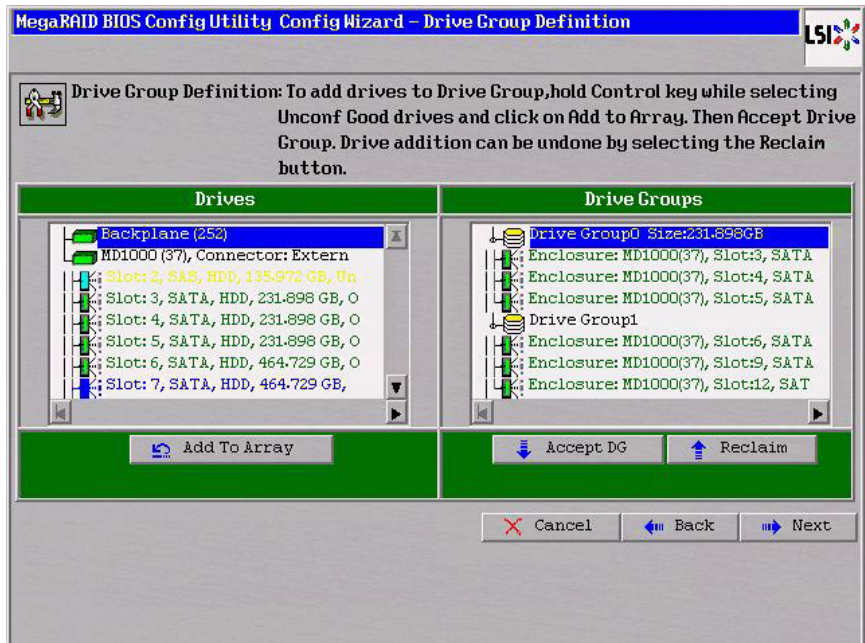
3. Click **Accept DG** to create a RAID 5 drive group.

An icon for a second drive group displays in the right panel.

4. Click on the icon for the second drive group to select it.
5. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting at least three more ready drives in the Drives panel to create a second drive group.
6. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 3.24](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

Figure 3.24 WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen

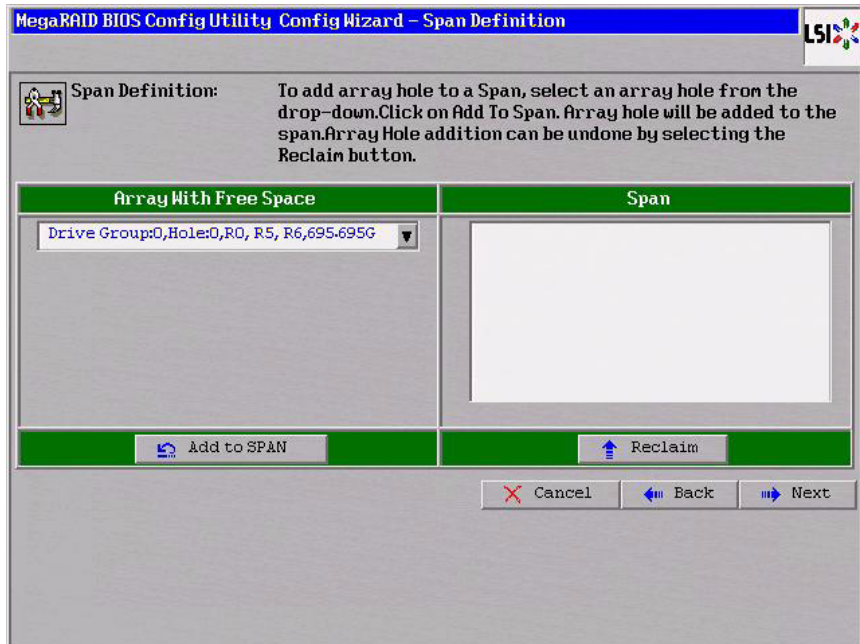


7. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive groups, select each drive group and click **Accept DG** for each.
8. Click **Next**.

The Span Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.25](#).

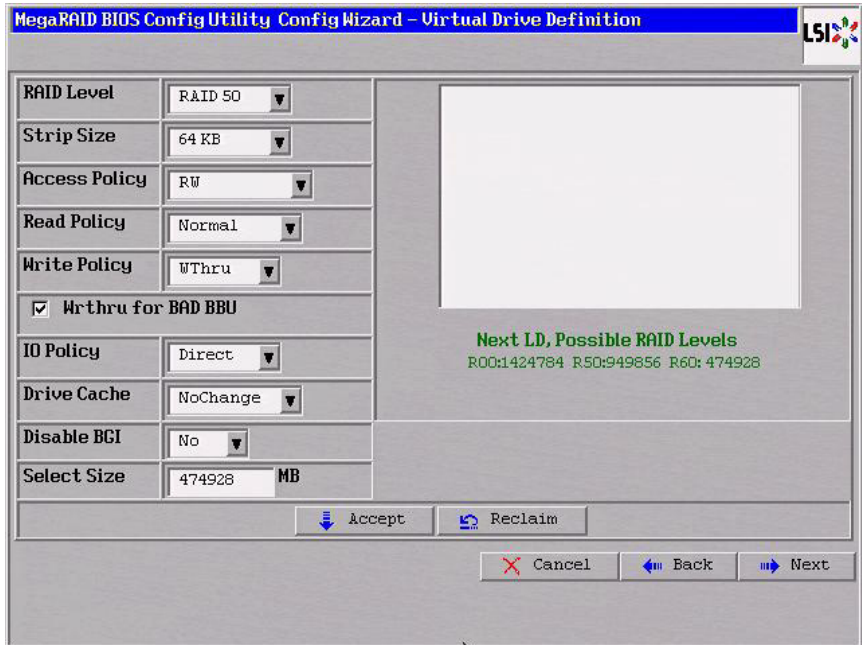
This screen displays the drive group holes you can select to add to a span.

**Figure 3.25 WebBIOS Span Definition Screen**



9. Under the heading **Array With Free Space**, hold <Ctrl> while you select a drive group of three or more drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.  
The drive group you select displays in the right frame under the heading **Span**.
10. Hold <Ctrl> while you select a second drive group of three or more drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.  
Both drive groups display in the right frame under **Span**.
11. Click **Next**.  
The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.26](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drive(s).
12. Hold <Ctrl> while you select two 3-drive drive groups in the Configuration panel on the right.

**Figure 3.26 WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**



13. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 50.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *RW:* Allow read/write access.

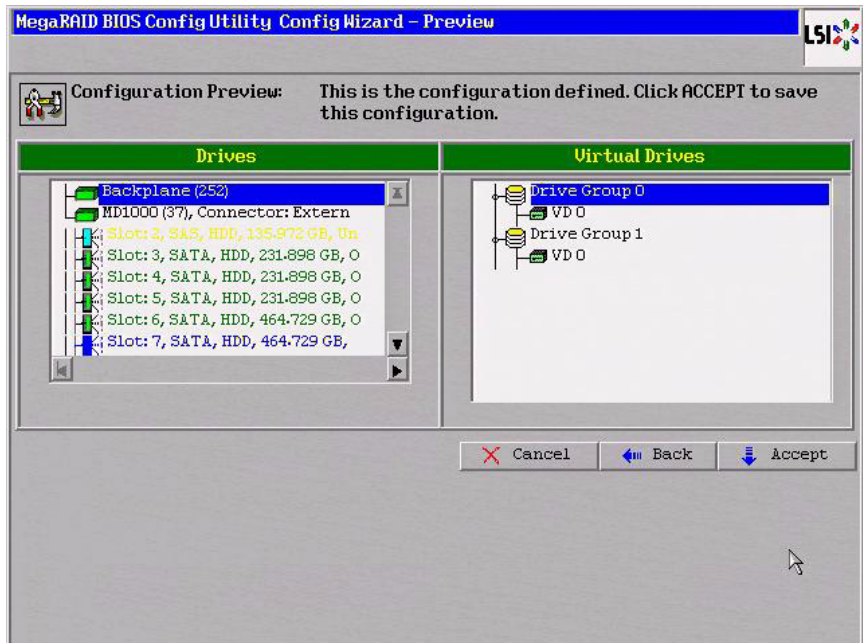
- ◇ *Read Only*: Allow read-only access. This is the default.
- ◇ *Blocked*: Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy**: Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *Normal*: This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Ahead*: This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.
  - ◇ *Adaptive*: When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).
- **Write Policy**: Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *WBack*: In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.
  - ◇ *WThru*: In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Bad BBU*: Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

**Caution:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.
    - ◇ *Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.
  - **Drive Policy: Specify the drive cache policy:**
    - ◇ *Enable:* Enable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *Disable:* Disable the drive cache. This drive policy is the default.
    - ◇ *NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This is the default.
  - **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:
    - ◇ *No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Yes:* Select Yes if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.
  - **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 50 shown in the Configuration Panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
14. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
  15. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.
 

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.27](#).

**Figure 3.27 RAID 50 Configuration Preview**



16. Check the information in the configuration preview.
17. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
18. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

### 3.4.3.8 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 60

RAID 60 provides the features of both RAID 0 and RAID 6, and includes both parity and drive striping across multiple drive groups. RAID 6 supports two independent parity blocks per stripe. A RAID 60 virtual drive can survive the loss of two drives in each of the RAID 6 sets without losing data. RAID 60 is best implemented on two RAID 6 drive groups with data striped across both drive groups. Use RAID 60 for data that requires a very high level of protection from loss.

RAID 60 can support up to eight spans and tolerate up to 16 drive failures, though less than total drive capacity is available. Two drive failures can be tolerated in each RAID 6 level drive group.

RAID 60 is appropriate when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfer, and medium to large capacity.

When you select **Manual Configuration** and click **Next**, the Disk Group Definition screen appears. You use this screen to select drives to create drive groups.

1. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting at least three ready drives in the Drives panel on the left.
2. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right.

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.

3. Click **Accept DG** to create a RAID 6 drive group.

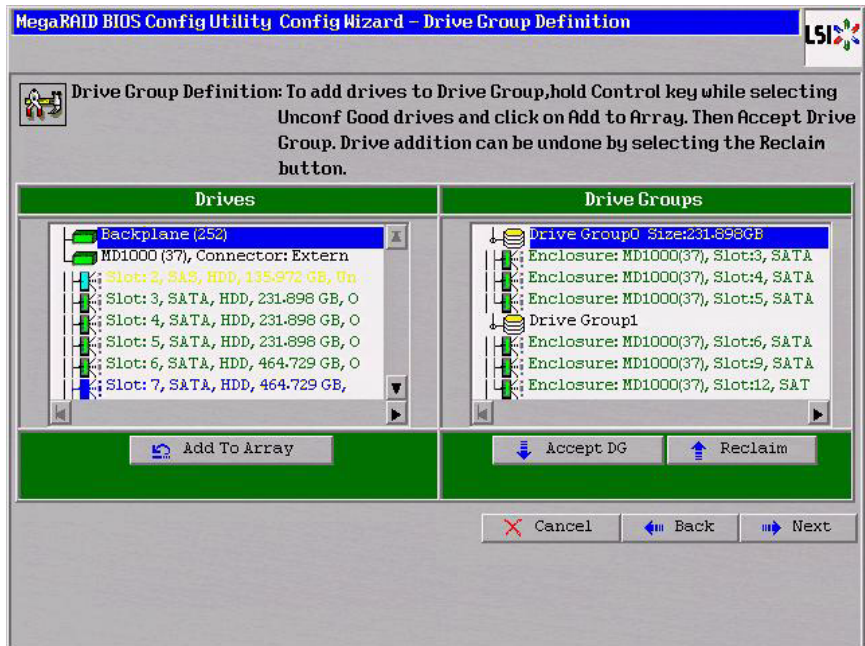
An icon for a second drive group displays in the right panel.

4. Click on the icon for the second drive group to select it.
5. Hold <Ctrl> while selecting at least three more ready drives in the Drives panel to create a second drive group.
6. Click **Add To Array** to move the drives to a proposed drive group configuration in the Disk Groups panel on the right, as shown in [Figure 3.24](#).

If you need to undo the changes, click the **Reclaim** button.



Figure 3.28 WebBIOS Disk Group Definition Screen



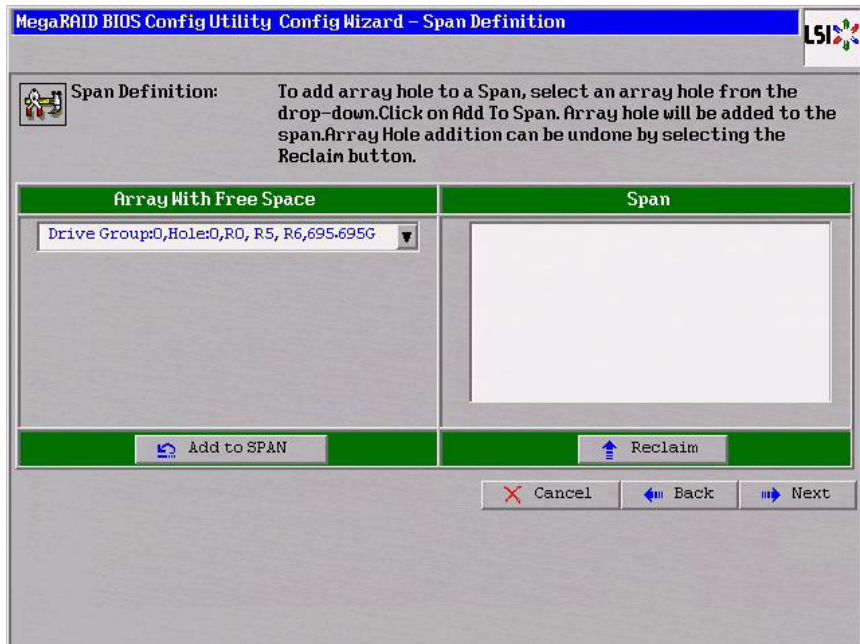
7. When you have finished selecting drives for the drive groups, select each drive group and click **Accept DG** for each.

8. Click **Next**.

The Span Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.29](#).

This screen displays the drive group holes you can select to add to a span.

**Figure 3.29 WebBIOS Span Definition Screen**



9. Under the heading **Array With Free Space**, hold <Ctrl> while you select a drive group of three or more drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.

The drive group you select displays in the right frame under the heading **Span**.

10. Hold <Ctrl> while you select a second drive group of three or more drives, and click **Add to SPAN**.

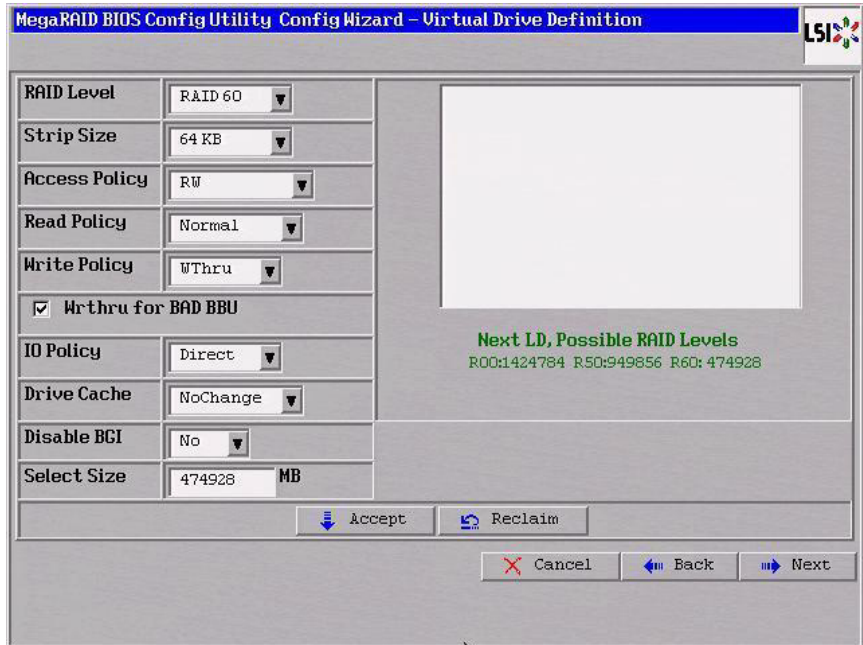
Both drive groups display in the right frame under **Span**.

11. Click **Next**.

The Virtual Drive Definition screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.26](#). You use this screen to select the RAID level, stripe size, read policy, and other attributes for the new virtual drive(s).

12. Hold <Ctrl> while you select two 3-drive drive groups in the Configuration window on the right.

**Figure 3.30 WebBIOS Virtual Drive Definition Screen**



13. Change the virtual drive options from the defaults listed on the screen as needed.

Here are brief explanations of the virtual drive options:

- **RAID Level:** The drop-down menu lists the possible RAID levels for the virtual drive. Select RAID 60.
- **Stripe Size:** The stripe size specifies the length of the data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. You can set the stripe size to 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes. A larger stripe size produces higher read performance. If your computer regularly performs random read requests, choose a smaller stripe size. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *RW*: Allow read/write access.

- ◇ *Read Only*: Allow read-only access. This is the default.
- ◇ *Blocked*: Do not allow access.
- **Read Policy**: Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *Normal*: This disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Ahead*: This enables read ahead capability, which allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.
  - ◇ *Adaptive*: When Adaptive read ahead is selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *Normal* (no read ahead).
- **Write Policy**: Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *WBack*: In Writeback mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This setting is recommended in Standard mode.
  - ◇ *WThru*: In Writethrough mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Bad BBU*: Select this mode if you want the controller to use Writeback mode but the controller has no BBU or the BBU is bad. If you do not choose this option, the controller firmware automatically switches to Writethrough mode if it detects a bad or missing BBU.

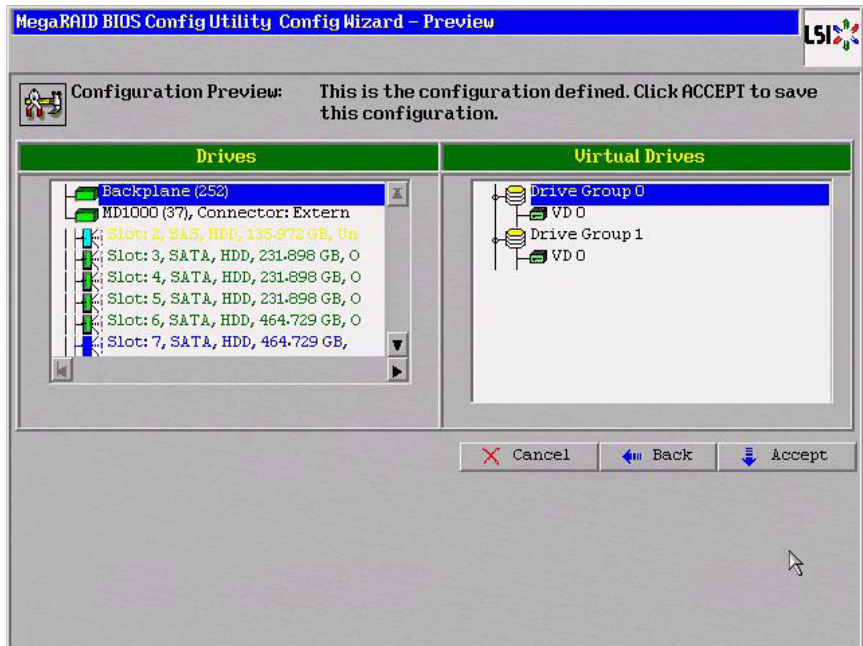
**Caution:** LSI allows Writeback mode to be used with or without a battery. LSI recommends that you use **either** a battery to protect the controller cache, or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect the entire system. If you do not use a battery or a UPS, and there is a power failure, you risk losing the data in the controller cache.

- **IO Policy:** The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.
    - ◇ *Direct:* In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Cached:* In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory.
  - **Drive Policy: Specify the drive cache policy:**
    - ◇ *Enable:* Enable the drive cache.
    - ◇ *Disable:* Disable the drive cache. This drive policy is the default.
    - ◇ *NoChange:* Leave the current drive cache policy as is. This is the default.
  - **Disable BGI:** Specify the background initialization status:
    - ◇ *No:* Leave background initialization enabled. This means that a new configuration can be initialized in the background while you use WebBIOS to do other configuration tasks. This is the default.
    - ◇ *Yes:* Select Yes if you do not want to allow background initializations for configurations on this controller.
  - **Select Size:** Specify the size of the virtual drive in megabytes. Normally, this would be the full size for RAID 60 shown in the Configuration panel on the right. You may specify a smaller size if you want to create other virtual drives on the same drive group.
 

Note: WebBIOS does not allow you to select 8 Kbytes as the stripe size when you create a RAID 60 drive group with six drives.
14. Click **Accept** to accept the changes to the virtual drive definition, or click **Reclaim** to return to the previous settings.
  15. Click **Next** when you are finished defining virtual drives.
 

The Configuration Preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.27](#).

**Figure 3.31 RAID 60 Configuration Preview**



16. Check the information in the configuration preview.
17. If the virtual drive configuration is acceptable, click **Accept** to save the configuration. Otherwise, or click **Back** to return to the previous screens and change the configuration.
18. If you accept the configuration, click **Yes** at the prompt to save the configuration.

The WebBIOS main menu appears.

---

## 3.5 Viewing and Changing Device Properties

This section explains how you can use the WebBIOS CU to view and change the properties for controllers, virtual drives, drives, and BBUs.

### 3.5.1 Viewing and Changing Controller Properties

WebBIOS displays information for one LSI SAS controller at a time. If your computer system has multiple LSI SAS controllers, you can view

information for a different controller by clicking **Controller Selection** on the main screen. When the Controller Selection screen appears, select the controller you want from the list.

To view the properties for the currently selected controller, click **Controller Properties** on the main WebBIOS screen. There are three Controller Properties screens. [Figure 3.32](#) shows the first screen.

**Figure 3.32 First Controller Properties Screen**

MegaRAID SAS 8888ELP			
Serial Number	123456	FRU	None
SubVendorID	0x1000	Encryption Capable	No
SubDeviceID	0x1006	NURAMSize	32 KB
PortCount	8	Memory Size	256 MB
HostInterface	PCIe	Min Stripe Size	8 KB
Firmware Version	1.40.02-0514	Max Stripe Size	1024 KB
FW Package Version	9.1.1-0012	Virtual Drive Count	0
Firmware Time	Aug 29 2008;18:40:33	Drive Count	14
WebBIOS Version	2.2-13-Rel		

The information on this screen is read-only and cannot be modified directly. Most of this information is self-explanatory. The screen lists the number of virtual drives that are already defined on this controller, and the number of drives connected to the controller.

If a background initialization is in progress, you can click **Background Init Progress** to determine its state of completion. Click **Next** to view the second Controller Properties screen, as shown in [Figure 3.33](#).

Figure 3.33 Second Controller Properties Screen

Properties			
Battery Backup	None	Coercion Mode	1GB-way
Set Factory Defaults	No	S.M.A.R.T Polling	300 seconds
Cluster Mode	Disabled	Alarm Control	Enabled
Rebuild Rate	30	Patrol Read Rate	30
BGI Rate	30	Cache Flush Interval	4
CC Rate	30	Spinup Drive Count	2
Reconstruction Rate	30	Spinup Delay	12
Controller BIOS	Enabled	StopOnError	Enabled
NCQ	Enabled	Drive Powersave	Disabled
Connector 1	External	Connector 2	External

Submit    Reset    Next

Home    Back

Click **Next** to view the third Controller Properties screen, as shown in Figure 3.33.



**Figure 3.34 Third Controller Properties Screen**

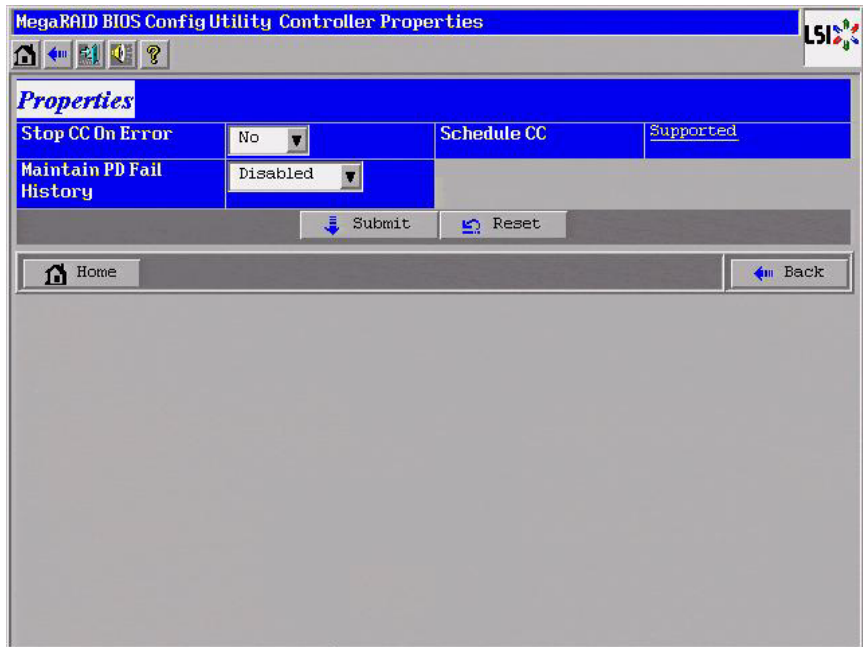


Table 3.2 describes the entries/options listed on the second and third Controller Properties screen. LSI recommends that you leave these options at their default settings to achieve the best performance, unless you have a specific reason for changing them.

**Table 3.2 Controller Properties Menu Options**

Option	Description
Battery Backup	This entry indicates whether the selected controller has a BBU. If present, you can click <i>Present</i> to view information about the BBU. For more information, see Section 3.5.4, “Viewing and Changing Battery Backup Unit Information.”
Set Factory Defaults	Use this option to load the default MegaRAID® WebBIOS CU settings. The default is <i>No</i> .
Cluster Mode	Use this option to enable or disable Cluster mode. The default is <i>Disabled</i> . A cluster is a grouping of independent servers that can access the same data storage and provide services to a common set of clients. When Cluster mode is disabled, the system operates in Standard mode.

**Table 3.2 Controller Properties Menu Options (Cont.)**

Option	Description
Rebuild Rate	Use this option to select the rebuild rate for drives connected to the selected controller. The default is 30 percent. The rebuild rate is the percentage of system resources dedicated to rebuilding a failed drive. The higher the number, the more system resources devoted to a rebuild.
BGI Rate	Use this option to select the amount of system resources dedicated to background initialization of virtual drives connected to the selected controller. The default is 30 percent.
CC Rate	Use this option to select the amount of system resources dedicated to consistency checks of virtual drives connected to the selected controller. The default is 30 percent.
Reconstruction Rate	Use this option to select the amount of system resources dedicated to reconstruction of drives connected to the selected controller. The default is 30 percent.
Controller BIOS	Use this option to enable or disable the BIOS for the selected controller. The default is <i>Enabled</i> . If the boot device is on the selected controller, the BIOS must be enabled; otherwise, the BIOS should be disabled or it might not be possible to use a boot device elsewhere.
NCQ	Native Command Queuing (NCQ) gives an individual drive the ability to optimize the order in which it executes the read and write commands. The default is <i>Enabled</i> .
Connector 1	Identifies where the chain of enclosures is connected to the RAID controller.
Coercion Mode	Drive coercion is a tool for forcing drives of varying capacities to the same size so they can be used in a drive group. The coercion mode options are <i>None</i> , <i>128MB-way</i> , and <i>1GB-way</i> . The default is <i>None</i> .  Note: The number you choose depends on how much the drives from various vendors vary in their actual size. LSI recommends that you use the 1GB coercion mode option.
S.M.A.R.T. Polling	Use this option to determine how frequently the controller polls for drives reporting a Predictive Drive Failure (S.M.A.R.T.: Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology error). The default is 300 seconds (5 minutes).
Alarm Control	Select this option to enable, disable, or silence the onboard alarm tone generator on the controller. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
Patrol Read Rate	Use this option to select the rate for patrol reads for drives connected to the selected controller. The default is 30 percent. The patrol read rate is the percentage of system resources dedicated to running a patrol read. See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Patrol Read-Related Controller Properties"</a> for additional information about patrol read.
Cache Flush Interval	Use this option to control the interval (in seconds) at which the contents of the onboard data cache are flushed. The default is 4 seconds.
Spinup Drive Count	Use this option to control the number of drives that spin up simultaneously. The default is 2 drives.

**Table 3.2 Controller Properties Menu Options (Cont.)**

Option	Description
Spinup Delay	Use this option to control the interval (in seconds) between spinup of drives connected to this controller. The delay prevents a drain on the system's power supply that would occur if all drives spun up at the same time. The default is 12 seconds.
StopOnError	Enable this option if you want the boot process to stop when the controller BIOS encounters an error during boot-up. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
Drive Powersave	Drive Powersave conserves energy by placing certain unused drives into powersave mode. Use this field to choose whether to allow unconfigured drives to enter powersave mode.  When this option is selected, unconfigured drives may be spun down. When not selected, these drives are not spun down. The controller will automatically spin up drives from powersave mode whenever necessary. The powersave option is not selected by default. You have to select it to enable the spin-down of drives.
Connector 2	Identifies where the chain of enclosures is connected to the RAID controller.
Stop CC on Error	Enable this option if you want to stop a consistency check when the controller BIOS encounters an error. The default is <i>No</i> .
Maintain PD Fail History	Enable this option to maintain the history of all drive failures. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
Schedule CC	Indicates whether the option to schedule the date and time for a consistency check is supported.

If you make changes to the options on this screen, click **Submit** to register them. If you change your mind, click **Reset** to return the options to their default values.

### 3.5.2 Viewing and Changing Virtual Drive Properties

Access the Virtual Drive screen by clicking on a virtual drive in the list of virtual drives in the right panel on the WebBIOS CU main screen. The Virtual Drive screen displays, as shown in [Figure 3.35](#).

Figure 3.35 Virtual Drive Screen



The Properties panel of this screen displays the virtual drive's RAID level, state, size, and stripe size.

The Policies panel lists the virtual drive policies that were defined when the storage configuration was created. For information about these policies, see [Section 3.4.3, “Using Manual Configuration.”](#) To change any of these policies, make a selection from the drop-down menu and click **Change**.

The Operations panel lists operations that can be performed on the virtual drive. To perform an operation, select it and click **Go**. Then choose from the following options:

- Select **Del** to delete this virtual drive. For more information, see [Section 3.7.2, “Deleting a Virtual Drive.”](#)
- Select **Locate** to make the LEDs flash on the drives used by this virtual drive. This works only if the drives are installed in a drive enclosure that supports SAFTE.

- Select **Fast Init** or **Slow Init** to initialize this virtual drive. A fast initialization quickly writes zeroes to the first and last 10 Mbyte regions of the new virtual drive and then completes the initialization in the background. A slow initialization is not complete until the entire virtual drive has been initialized with zeroes. It is seldom necessary to use this option, because the virtual drive was already initialized when you created it.

**Caution:** Before you run an initialization, back up any data on the virtual drive that you want to save. All data on the virtual drive is lost when you initialize it.

- Select **CC** to run a consistency check on this virtual drive. For more information, see [Section 3.7.1, “Running a Consistency Check.”](#) (This option is not available for RAID 0 virtual drives.)

In the right panel of the Virtual Drive screen you can change the virtual drive configuration by adding or removing a drive or by changing the RAID level.

**Caution:** Before you change a virtual drive configuration, back up any data on the virtual drive that you want to save.

To remove a drive from a virtual drive, select the drive in the small panel beneath the *Remove drive* option. Then select **Remove drive** and click **Go** at the bottom of the panel.

See [Section 3.7.4, “Migrating the RAID Level of a Virtual Drive”](#) for information about adding a drive to a virtual drive or migrating its RAID level.

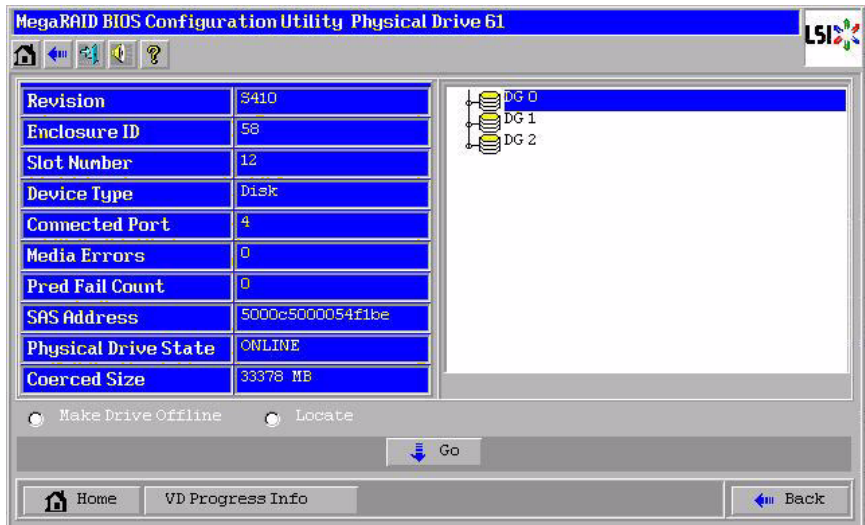
### 3.5.3 Viewing Drive Properties

The Physical Drive screen displays the properties of a selected drive and enables you to perform operations on the drive. There are two ways to access the Physical Drive screen:

- On the main menu screen, click on a drive in the right panel under the heading **Physical Drives**.
- On the main menu screen, click on **Physical Drives** in the left panel to display the Physical Drive screen. Then click on a drive in the right panel. Click on the **Properties** button, and click **Go**. The properties for the selected drive displays.

Figure 3.36 shows the Physical Drive screen.

**Figure 3.36 Physical Drive Screen**



The drive properties are view-only and are self-explanatory. Note that the properties include the state of the drive.

Operations you can perform are listed at the bottom of the screen. After you select an operation, click **Go** to start the operation. The operations vary depending on the drive state. If the drive state is **Online**, the following operations appear:

- Select **MakeDriveOffline** if you want to force the drive offline.

**Note:** If you force offline a good drive that is part of a redundant drive group with a hot spare, the drive will rebuild to the hot spare drive. The drive you forced offline will go into the *Unconfigured Bad* state. Access the BIOS utility to set the drive to the *Unconfigured Good* state.

- Select **Locate** to make the LED flash on the drive. This works only if the drive is installed in a drive enclosure.

If the drive state is Unconfigured Good, four additional operations appear on this screen:

- Select **Make Global HSP** to make a global hot spare, available to all of the virtual drives.
- Select **Make Dedicated HSP** to make a hot spare dedicated to a specific virtual drive.

WebBIOS displays the global hot spare as `Global` and the dedicated hot spare as `Ded`. The icon for the dedicated hot spare displays under its associated virtual drive. The drive number, drive state, drive capacity, and drive manufacturer display.

- Select **Enclosure Affinity** so if there are drive failures present on a split backplane configuration, then the hot spare will be used first on the backplane side that it resides in.
- Select **Prepare for Removal** to prepare the drive for removal from the enclosure.

The **Prepare for Removal** feature is different from spinning a drive down into powersave mode because it also involves flagging the drive as ready to remove. Therefore, if you choose to prepare a drive for removal, **Ready to Remove** displays in the device tree for that drive, instead of **Powersave**.

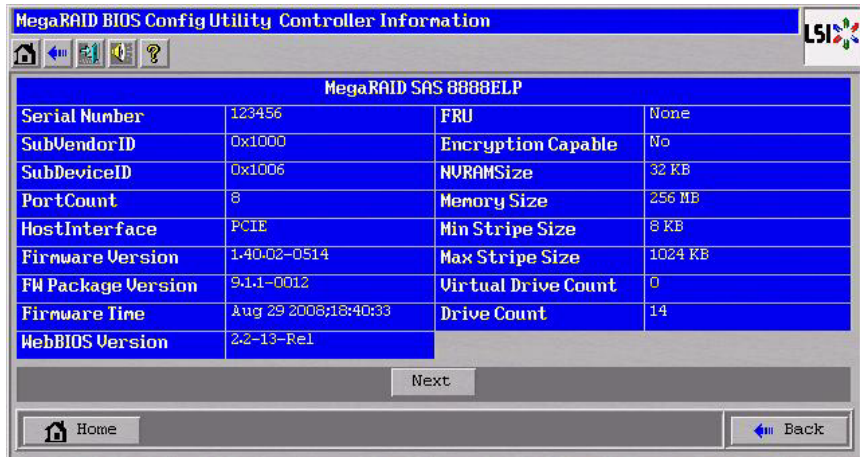
### 3.5.4 Viewing and Changing Battery Backup Unit Information

If your SAS controller has a battery backup unit (BBU), you can view information about it and change some settings. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Click **Controller Properties** on the WebBIOS CU main menu screen.

The first **Controller Properties** screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.37](#).

**Figure 3.37 First Controller Properties Screen**



2. Click **Next** to view the second Controller Properties screen.

The second Controller Properties screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.38](#). The **Battery Backup** field at the top left of the screen indicates whether the iBBU is present.

**Figure 3.38 Second Controller Properties Screen**



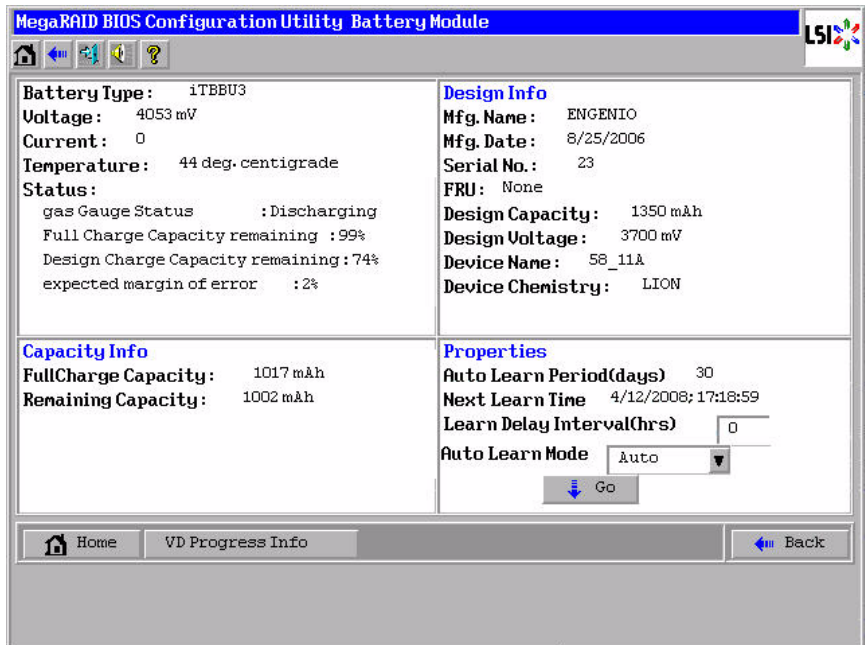
3. Click **Present** in the **Battery Backup** field.



The Battery Module screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.39](#). This screen contains the following information:

- Battery information
- Design information
- Capacity information
- Auto Learn properties and settings

**Figure 3.39 Battery Module Screen**



Most of the Battery Module properties are view-only and are self-explanatory.

In the lower right corner of the screen are the auto learn options. A *learning cycle* is a battery calibration operation performed by the controller periodically to determine the condition of the battery. You can change the learn delay interval (the length of time between automatic learning cycles) and the auto learn mode.

**Note:** LSI recommends leaving the the learn delay interval and the auto learn mode at their default settings.

### – Setting the Learn Delay Interval

The learn delay interval is the length of time between automatic learning cycles. Perform the following steps to change the interval:

1. Open the drop-down menu in the **Auto Learn Mode** field.
2. Select the learn mode as `Auto` (the default).  
This is so the controller performs the learning cycle automatically.
3. Change the number of hours in the **Learn Delay Interval** field.  
You can delay the start of the learn cycles for up to 168 hours (7 days).
4. Click **Go** to set the interval.

### – Setting the Auto Learn Mode

You can start battery learning cycles manually or automatically. The Auto Learn modes are:

- **BBU Auto Learn:** Firmware tracks the time since the last learning cycle and performs a learn cycle when due.
- **BBU Auto Learn Disabled:** Firmware does not monitor or initiate a learning cycle. You can schedule learning cycles manually.
- **BBU Auto Learn Warn:** Firmware warns about a pending learning cycle. You can initiate a learning cycle manually. After the learning cycle is complete, firmware resets the counter and warns you when the next learning cycle time is reached.

Perform the following steps to choose an auto learn mode:

1. Open the drop-down menu in the **Auto Learn Mode** field.
2. Select an auto learn mode.
3. Click **Go** to set the auto learn mode.

**Note:** When you replace the iBBU, the charge cycle counter is reset automatically.

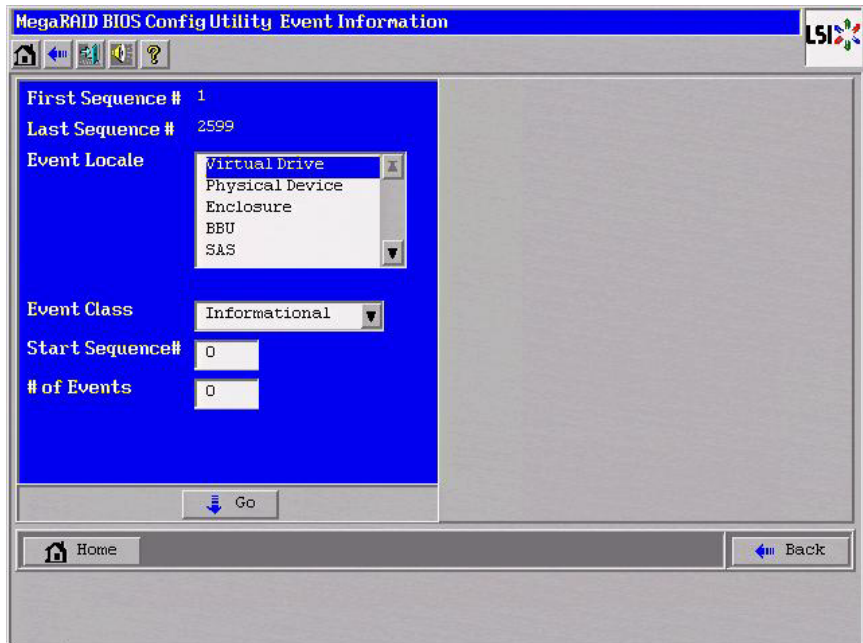
---

## 3.6 Viewing System Event Information

The SAS controller firmware monitors the activity and performance of all storage configurations and devices in the system. When an event occurs

(such as the creation of a new virtual drive or the removal of a drive) an event message is generated and is stored in the controller NVRAM. You can use the WebBIOS CU to view these event messages. To do this, click **Events** on the main WebBIOS CU screen. The Event Information screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.40](#).

**Figure 3.40 Event Information Screen**



The right side of the screen is blank until you select an event to view. The First Sequence and Last Sequence fields in the upper left of the screen show you how many event entries are currently stored.

To view event information, follow these steps:

1. Select an Event Locale from the menu. For example, select **Enclosure** to view events relating to the drive enclosure.
2. Select an Event Class: *Information*, *Warning*, *Critical*, *Fatal*, or *Dead*.
3. Enter a Start Sequence number, between the First Sequence and Last Sequence numbers. The higher the number, the more recent the event.

4. Enter the Number of events of this type that you want to view, and click **Go**.

The first event in the sequence appears in the right panel.

5. Click **Next** or **Prev** to page forward or backward through the sequence of events.
6. If you want, select different event criteria in the left panel, and click **Go** again to view a different sequence of events.

Each event entry includes a timestamp and a description to help you determine when the event occurred and what it was.

---

## 3.7 Managing Configurations

This section includes information about maintaining and managing storage configurations.

### 3.7.1 Running a Consistency Check

You should periodically run a consistency check on fault-tolerant virtual drives. A consistency check verifies that the redundancy data is correct and available for RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60 drive groups. To do this, follow these steps:

1. On the main WebBIOS CU screen, select a virtual drive.
2. Click **Virtual Drives**.
3. When the Virtual Drive screen appears, select **CC** in the lower left panel, and click **Go**.

The consistency check begins.

If the WebBIOS CU finds a difference between the data and the parity value on the redundant drive group, it assumes that the data is accurate and automatically corrects the parity value. Be sure to back up the data before running a consistency check if you think the consistency data may be corrupted.

## 3.7.2 Deleting a Virtual Drive

You can delete any virtual drive on the controller if you want to reuse that space for a new virtual drive. The WebBIOS CU provides a list of configurable drive groups where there is a space to configure. If multiple virtual drives are defined on a single drive group, you can delete a virtual drive without deleting the whole drive group.

To delete a virtual drive, follow these steps:

**Caution:** Back up any data that you want to keep before you delete the virtual drive.

1. On the main WebBIOS CU screen, select a virtual drive.
2. Click **Virtual Drives**.
3. When the Virtual Drive screen appears, select **Del** in the lower left panel, and click **Go**.
4. When the message appears, confirm that you want to delete the virtual drive.

## 3.7.3 Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration

A *foreign configuration* is a storage configuration that already exists on a replacement set of drives that you install in a computer system.

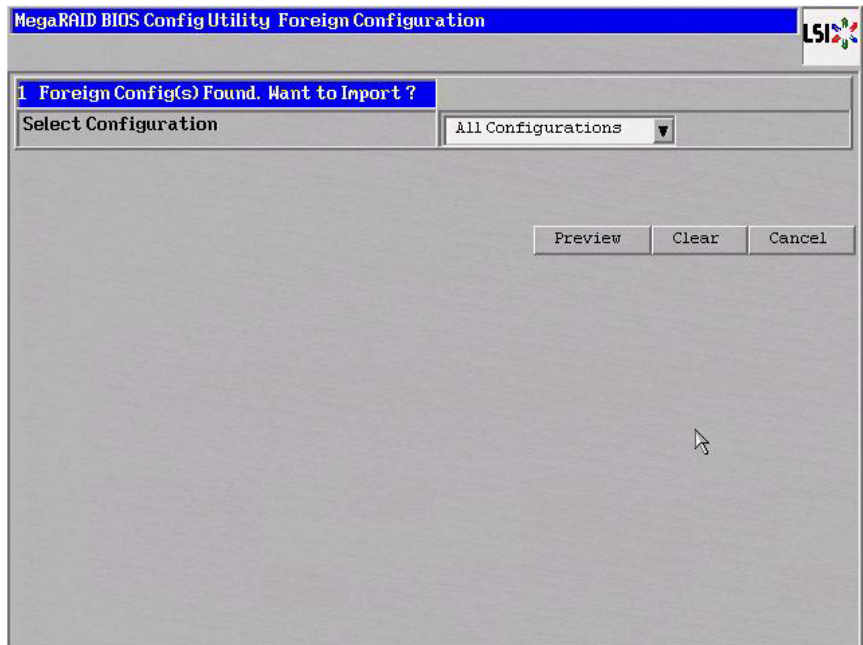
In addition, if one or more drives are removed from a configuration, by a cable pull or drive removal, for example, the configuration on those drives is considered a foreign configuration by the RAID controller.

The BIOS CU allows you to import the foreign configuration to the RAID controller, or to clear the configuration so you can create a new configuration using these drives.

**Note:** When you create a new configuration, the WebBIOS CU shows only the unconfigured drives. Drives that have existing configurations, including foreign configurations, will **not** appear. To use drives with existing configurations, you must first clear the configuration on those drives.

If WebBIOS CU detects a foreign configuration, the import screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.41](#).

**Figure 3.41 Foreign Configuration Import Screen**



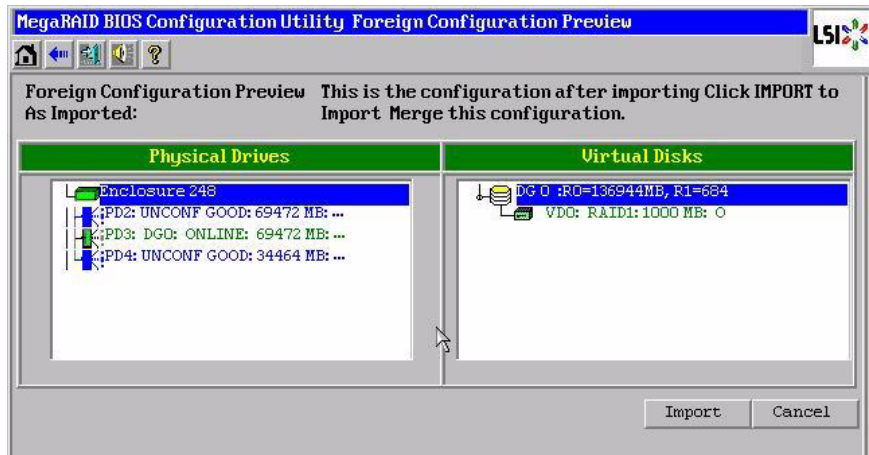
The GUID (Global Unique Identifier) entries on the drop-down list are OEM names and will vary from one installation to another.

Click **Preview** if you want to preview the foreign configuration. The preview screen appears, as shown in [Figure 3.42](#).

Click **Clear** if you want to clear the configuration and reuse the drives for another virtual drive.

Click **Cancel** to cancel the importation or preview of the configuration.

**Figure 3.42 Foreign Configuration Preview Screen**



The right panel shows the virtual drive properties of the foreign configuration. In this example, there is a RAID 1 virtual drive with 1,000 Mbytes. The left panel shows the drives that comprise the foreign configuration.

Click **Import** to import this foreign configuration and use it on this controller.

Click **Cancel** to clear the configuration and reuse the drives for another virtual drive.

### 3.7.3.1 Foreign Configurations in Cable Pull and Drive Removal Scenarios

If one or more drives are removed from a configuration, by a cable pull or drive removal, for example, the configuration on those drives is considered a foreign configuration by the RAID controller.

Use the **Foreign Configuration Preview** screen to import or clear the foreign configuration in each case. The import procedure and clear procedure are described in [Section 3.7.3, “Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration.”](#)

The following scenarios can occur with cable pulls or drive removals.

**Note:** If you want to import the foreign configuration in any of the following scenarios, you should have all of the drives in the enclosure before you perform the import operation.

1. Scenario #1: If all of the drives in a configuration are removed and re-inserted, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. If you select **Import**, automatic rebuilds will occur in redundant virtual drives.

Note: Start a consistency check immediately after the rebuild is complete to ensure data integrity for the virtual drives. See [Section 3.7.1, "Running a Consistency Check,"](#) for more information about checking data consistency.

2. Scenario #2: If some of the drives in a configuration are removed and re-inserted, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. If you select **Import**, automatic rebuilds will occur in redundant virtual drives.

Note: Start a consistency check immediately after the rebuild is complete to ensure data integrity for the virtual drives. See [Section 3.7.1, "Running a Consistency Check,"](#) for more information about checking data consistency.

3. Scenario #3: If all of the drives in a virtual drive are removed, but at different times, and re-inserted, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. If you select **Import**, all drives that were pulled *before* the virtual drive became offline will be imported and then automatically rebuilt. Automatic rebuilds will occur in redundant virtual drives.

4. If the drives in a non-redundant virtual drive are removed, the controller considers the drives to have foreign configurations.

Import or clear the foreign configuration. No rebuilds will occur after the import operation because there is no redundant data to rebuild the drives with.

### 3.7.3.2 Importing Foreign Configurations from Integrated RAID to MegaRAID

The LSI Integrated RAID solution simplifies the configuration options and provides firmware support in its host controllers. LSI offers two types of Integrated RAID (IR): Integrated Mirroring (IM) and Integrated Striping (IS).



You can import an IM or IS RAID configuration from an IR system into a MegaRAID system. The MegaRAID system treats the IR configuration as a foreign configuration. You can import or clear the IR configuration.

**Note:** For more information about Integrated RAID, refer to the *Integrated RAID for SAS User's Guide*. You can find this document on the LSI web site at:  
<http://www.lsi.com/cm/DownloadSearch.do>.

### 3.7.3.3 Troubleshooting Information

An IR virtual drive can have either 64 Mbytes or 512 Mbytes available for metadata at the end of the drive. This data is in LSI Data Format (LDF). MegaRAID virtual drives have 512 Mbytes for metadata at the end of the drive in the Disk Data format (DDF).

To import an IR virtual drive into MegaRAID, the IR virtual drive must have 512 Mbytes in the metadata, which is the same amount of megadata as in a MegaRAID virtual drive. If the IR virtual drive has only 64 Mbytes when you attempt to import it into MegaRAID, the import will fail because the last 448 Mbytes of your data will be overwritten and the data lost.

If your IR virtual drive has only 64 Mbytes for metadata at the end of the drive, you cannot import the virtual drive into MegaRAID. You need to use another upgrade method, such as backup/restore to the upgraded virtual drive type.

In order to import an IR virtual drive into a MegaRAID system, use the **Foreign Configuration Preview** screen to import or clear the foreign configuration. The import procedure and the clear procedure are described in [Section 3.7.3, "Importing or Clearing a Foreign Configuration."](#)

## 3.7.4 Migrating the RAID Level of a Virtual Drive

As the amount of data and the number of drives in your system increase, you can use RAID-level migration to change a virtual drive from one RAID level to another. You do not have to power down or reboot the system. When you migrate a virtual drive, you can keep the same number of drives, or you can add drives. You can use the WebBIOS CU to migrate the RAID level of an existing virtual drive.

**Note:** While you can apply RAID-level migration at any time, LSI recommends that you do so when there are no reboots. Many operating systems issues I/O operations serially (one at a time) during boot. With a RAID-level migration running, a boot can often take more than 15 minutes.

Migrations are allowed for the following RAID levels:

- RAID 0 to RAID 1
- RAID 0 to RAID 5
- RAID 1 to RAID 5
- RAID 1 to RAID 6
- RAID 5 to RAID 6

[Table 3.3](#) lists the number of additional drives required when you change the RAID level of a virtual drive.

**Table 3.3 Additional Drives Required for RAID-Level Migration**

From RAID Level to RAID Level	Original Number of Drives in Drive Group	Additional Drives Required
RAID 0 to RAID 1	RAID 0: 1 drive	1
RAID 0 to RAID 5	RAID 0: 1 drive	2
RAID 1 to RAID 5	RAID 1: 2 drives	1
RAID 1 to RAID 6	RAID 1: 2 drives	1

Follow these steps to migrate the RAID level:

**Caution:** Back up any data that you want to keep before you change the RAID level of the virtual drive.

1. On the main WebBIOS CU screen, select a virtual drive.
2. Click **Virtual Drives**.
3. When the Virtual Drive screen appears, select **Migration only** (and skip to [step 6](#)) or **Migration with addition** in the right panel.
4. If you selected **Migration with addition**, select one or more drives from the small window in the lower right of the screen.

5. Select a new RAID level from the drop-down menu on the right. The available RAID levels are limited, based on the current RAID level of the virtual drive plus the number of drives available.
6. When you have made your selections, click **Go** at the bottom of the right panel.
7. When the message appears, confirm that you want to migrate the RAID level of the virtual drive.

A reconstruction operation begins on the virtual drive. You must wait until the reconstruction is completed before you perform any other tasks in the WebBIOS CU.



# Chapter 4

## MegaRAID Command Tool

---

The MegaRAID Command Tool (CT) is a command line interface (CLI) application for SAS. You can use this utility to configure, monitor, and maintain MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers and the devices connected to them.

**Note:** The CT supports only the MegaRAID controller. It supports SAS and SATA II, but it does not support other types of MegaRAID controllers, such as U320, SATA I, or IDE.

**Note:** The IA-64 release for Windows is similar to the 32-bit release, so you can follow the 32-bit instructions. 32-bit applications that were validated on an x64 system, such as the Intel Markette system, can use the 32-bit instructions, also.

This chapter has the following sections:

- [Section 4.1, “Product Overview”](#)
- [Section 4.2, “Novell NetWare, SCO, Solaris, FreeBSD, and DOS Operating System Support”](#)
- [Section 4.3, “Command Line Abbreviations and Conventions”](#)
- [Section 4.4, “Controller Property-Related Options”](#)
- [Section 4.5, “Patrol Read-Related Controller Properties”](#)
- [Section 4.6, “BIOS-Related Properties”](#)
- [Section 4.7, “Battery Backup Unit-Related Properties”](#)
- [Section 4.8, “Options for Displaying Logs Kept at Firmware Level”](#)
- [Section 4.9, “Configuration-Related Options”](#)
- [Section 4.10, “Virtual Drive-Related Options”](#)
- [Section 4.11, “Drive-Related Options”](#)

- [Section 4.12, “Enclosure-Related Options”](#)
  - [Section 4.13, “Flashing the Firmware”](#)
  - [Section 4.14, “SAS Topology”](#)
  - [Section 4.15, “Diagnostic-Related Options”](#)
  - [Section 4.16, “Miscellaneous Options”](#)
- 

## 4.1 Product Overview

The MegaCLI Configuration Utility is a command line interface application you can use to manage MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers. You can use MegaCLI Configuration Utility to perform the following tasks:

- Configure MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers and attached devices
- Display information about virtual drives and drives for the controller and other storage components
- Display ongoing progress for operations on drives and virtual drives
- Change properties for the virtual drives and drives for the controller and other storage components
- Set, retrieve, and verify controller default settings
- Change the firmware on the controllers
- Monitor the RAID storage systems
- Support RAID levels 0, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60 (depending on the RAID controller)
- Create and use scripts with the scriptable CLI tool
- Configure drive into groups and virtual drives on the controller
- Display configuration information for the controller, drives, and virtual drives
- Change virtual drive properties on the controller
- Change drive properties on the controller
- Display controller properties
- Load configuration to the controller from a file
- Save the controller configuration to a file

- Start or stop a rebuild, consistency check (CC), or initialization operation
- Enable or disable a background initialization (BGI)
- Stop or display an ongoing background initialization
- Start or display a reconstruction
- Start or stop patrol read
- Set and retrieve patrol read related settings
- Flash new firmware on the SAS RAID controller
- Read and program NVRAM and flash memory directly into DOS
- Display relevant messages on the console and/or in the log file
- Display controller data using one command
- Exit with predefined success or failure exit codes
- Scan, preview, and import foreign configurations
- Set predefined environment variables, such as the number of controllers and virtual drives
- Display firmware event logs
- Display help for how to use the command line options:
- Display battery unit properties
- Display enclosure properties
- Display and set connector mode on supported controllers

The following sections describe the command line options in the MegaCLI Configuration Utility that you can use to perform these functions.

Note : The MegaCLI Configuration Utility has support for the Intel® Itanium (64-bit) platform. MegaCLI is the only application currently supported on IPF system.

---

## 4.2 Novell NetWare, SCO, Solaris, FreeBSD, and DOS Operating System Support

The MegaCLI Configuration Utility functions under the Novell® NetWare®, SCO® OpenServer™, SCO UnixWare®, Solaris, FreeBSD, and DOS operating systems in the same way that it does under the Windows and Linux operating systems. All of the commands supported for the Windows and Linux operating systems are supported for the NetWare, SCO, and Solaris operating systems as well.

For the SCO OpenServer and SCO UnixWare operating systems, LSI provides an executable file that you can execute from any folder, and an image of the same executable file on a floppy drive. The image filename is `MegaCLI.image`. The floppy disk is provided so that you can distribute MegaCLI and install the executable file later as needed.

For the Solaris operating system, LSI provides an executable file that you can execute from any folder. No installation is required.

For the Novell NetWare operating system, LSI provides an executable file, `MegaCLI.nlm`, that you can execute from any folder. No installation is required. The output of all of the commands appears in the console window.

---

## 4.3 Command Line Abbreviations and Conventions

This section explains the abbreviations and conventions used with MegaCLI Configuration Utility commands.

### 4.3.1 Abbreviations Used in the Command Line

[Table 4.1](#) lists the abbreviations for the virtual drive parameters used in the following sections.



**Table 4.1 Command Line Abbreviations**

Abbreviation	Description
WB	WriteBack write policy
WT	WriteThrough write policy
ADRA	Adaptive Read Ahead read policy
RA	Read Ahead read policy
NORA	Normal Read policy (No read ahead)
DIO	Direct I/O cache policy
CIO	Cached I/O cache policy

### 4.3.2 Conventions

There are some options for which you can specify multiple values. You can enter commands for a single controller (-aN), multiple controllers (-a0,1,2) or work on all present controllers (-aALL). This is denoted as -aN|-a0,1,2|-aALL in this document and specifies that you can enter commands for one controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers.

**Note :** All options in the MegaRAID Command Tool are position-dependent, unless otherwise specified.

[Table 4.2](#) describes the conventions used in the options.

**Table 4.2 Conventions**

Convention	Description
	Specifies "or," meaning you can choose between options.
-aN	N specifies the controller number for the command.
-a0,1,2	Specifies the command is for controllers 0, 1, and 2. You can select two or more controllers in this manner.
-aALL	Specifies the command is for all controllers.
-Lx	x specifies the virtual drive number for the command.
-L0,1,2	Specifies the command is for virtual drives 0, 1, and 2. You can select two or more virtual drives in this manner.
-Lall	Specifies the command is for all virtual drives.

**Table 4.2 Conventions (Cont.)**

Convention	Description
[E0:S0,E1,S1,...]	<p>Specifies when one or more physical devices need(s) to be specified in the command line. Each [E:S] pair specifies one physical device where E means device ID of the enclosure in which a drive resides, and S means the slot number of the enclosure.</p> <p>In the case of a physical device directly connected to the SAS port on the controller, with no enclosure involved, the format of [:S] can be used where S means the port number on the controller. For devices attached through the backplane, the firmware provides an enclosure device ID and MegaCLI expects the user input in the format of [E:S]. In the following sections, only the format, [E:S], is used in the command descriptions, although both formats are valid.</p>
[ ]	<p>Indicates that the parameter is optional except when it is used to specify physical devices. For example, [WT] means the write policy (WriteThrough) is optional.</p> <p>If you enter WT at the command line, the application will use WriteThrough write policy for the virtual drive. Otherwise, it uses the default value for the parameter.</p>
{ }	<p>Indicates that the parameters are grouped and that they must be given at the same time.</p>

You can specify the `-Silent` command line option for all possible functions of the MegaCLI Configuration Utility. If you enter this option at the command line, no message displays on the screen.

---

## 4.4 Controller Property-Related Options

You can use the commands in this section to set or display properties related to the controller(s), such as the virtual drive parameters and factory defaults.

### 4.4.1 Display Controller Properties

Use the command in [Table 4.3](#) to display parameters for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.3 Controller Parameters**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -AdpAllinfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL</code>
-------------------	--

**Table 4.3 Controller Parameters (Cont.)**

<b>Description</b>	Displays information about the controller, including cluster state, BIOS, alarm, firmware version, BIOS version, battery charge counter value, rebuild rate, bus number/device number, present RAM, memory size, serial number of the board, and SAS address.
--------------------	---

## 4.4.2 Display Number of Controllers Supported

Use the command in [Table 4.3](#) to display the number of controllers supported on the system.

**Table 4.4 Number of Controllers Supported**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpCount
<b>Description</b>	Displays the number of controllers supported on the system and returns the number to the operating system.

## 4.4.3 Enable or Disable Automatic Rebuild

Use the command in [Table 4.5](#) to turn automatic rebuild on or off for the selected controller(s). If you have configured hot spares and enabled automatic rebuild, the RAID controller automatically tries to use them to rebuild failed drives. Automatic rebuild also controls whether a rebuild will start when a drive that was part of the drive group is reinserted.

**Table 4.5 Enable or Disable Automatic Rebuild**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpAutoRbld -Enbl -Dsb1 -Dsply -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Enables or disables automatic rebuild on the selected controller(s). The -Dsply option shows the status of the automatic rebuild state.

## 4.4.4 Flush Controller Cache

Use the command in [Table 4.6](#) to flush the controller cache on the selected controller(s). This option sends the contents of cache memory to the virtual drive(s). If the MegaRAID system must be powered down rapidly, you must flush the contents of the cache memory to preserve data integrity.

**Table 4.6 Cache Flush on Selected Controller**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpCacheFlush -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
-------------------	--

**Table 4.6 Cache Flush on Selected Controller (Cont.)**

---

<b>Description</b>	Flushes the controller cache on the selected controller(s).
--------------------	---

---

### 4.4.5 Set Controller Properties

This command sets the properties on the selected controller(s). For example, for {RebuildRate -val}, you can enter a percentage between 0 percent and 100 percent as the value for the rebuild rate. (The rebuild rate is the percentage of the compute cycles dedicated to rebuilding failed drives.) At 0 percent, the rebuild is done only if the system is not doing anything else. At 100 percent, the rebuild has a higher priority than any other system activity.

**Note:** LSI recommends the default rebuild rate of 30 percent, and the default patrol read rate of 30 percent.

Use the command in [Table 4.7](#) to display the list of properties you can set for the controller(s).

**Table 4.7 Set Controller Properties**

---

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpSetProp {CacheFlushInterval -val} {RebuildRate -val}  {PatrolReadRate -val} {BgiRate -val} {CCRate -val}  {ReconRate -val}  {SpinupDriveCount -val} {SpinupDelay -val} {CoercionMode -val}   {ClusterEnable -val} {PredFailPollInterval -val}  {BatWarnDsbl -val}  {EccBucketSize -val} {EccBucketLeakRate -val} {AbortCCOnError -val} AlarmEnbl   AlarmDsbl   AlarmSilence  {SMARTCpyBkEnbl -val}   -AutoDetectBackPlaneDsbl   -CopyBackDsbl   -LoadBalanceMode   -aN  -a0,1,2 -aALL
-------------------	--

---

**Table 4.7 Set Controller Properties (Cont.)**

<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets the properties on the selected controller(s). The possible settings are:</p> <p>CacheFlushInterval: Cache flush interval in seconds. Values: 0 to 255.</p> <p>RebuildRate: Rebuild rate. Values: 0 to 100.</p> <p>PatrolReadRate: Patrol read rate. Values: 0 to 100.</p> <p>BgiRate: Background initialization rate. Values: 0 to 100.</p> <p>CCRate: Consistency check rate. Values: 0 to 100.</p> <p>ReconRate: Reconstruction rate. Values: 0 to 100.</p> <p>SpinupDriveCount: Max number of drives to spin up at one time. Values: 0 to 255.</p> <p>SpinupDelay: Number of seconds to delay among spinup groups. Values: 0 to 255.</p> <p>CoercionMode: Drive capacity Coercion mode. Values: 0 - None, 1 - 128 Mbytes, 2 - 1 Gbytes.</p> <p>ClusterEnable: Cluster is enabled or disabled. Values: 0 - Disabled, 1 - Enabled.</p> <p>PredFailPollInterval: Number of seconds between predicted fail polls. Values: 0 to 65535.</p> <p>BatWarnDsbl: Disable warnings for missing battery or missing hardware. Values: 0 - Enabled, 1 - Disabled.</p> <p>EccBucketSize: Size of ECC single-bit-error bucket. Values: 0 to 255.</p> <p>EccBucketLeakRate: Leak rate (in minutes) of ECC single-bit-error bucket. Values: 0 to 65535.</p> <p>AbortCCOnError:</p> <p>AlarmEnbl: Set alarm to Enabled.</p> <p>AlarmDsbl: Set alarm to Disabled.</p> <p>AlarmSilence: Silence an active alarm.</p> <p>SMARTCpyBkEnbl: Enable copyback operation on Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology (SMART) errors. Copyback is initiated when the first SMART error occurs on a drive that is part of a virtual drive.</p> <p>AutoDetectBackPlaneDsbl: Detect automatically if the backplane has been disabled.</p> <p>CopyBackDsbl: Disable or enable the copyback operation.</p> <p>LoadBalanceMode: Disable or enable the load balancing mode.</p>
--------------------	--

## 4.4.6 Display Specified Controller Properties

Use the command in [Table 4.8](#) to display specified properties on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.8 Display Specified Controller Properties**

<b>Convention</b>	<pre>MegaCli -AdpGetProp CacheFlushInterval   RebuildRate   PatrolReadRate   BgiRate   CCRate   ReconRate   SpinupDriveCount   SpinupDelay   CoercionMode   PredFailPollInterval   ClusterEnable   BatWarnDsbl   EccBucketSize   EccBucketLeakRate   EccBucketCount   AlarmDsply -aN   -a0,1,2 -aALL</pre>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Displays the properties on the selected controller(s).</p> <p>EccBucketCount: Count of single-bit ECC errors currently in the bucket.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Table 4.7</a> for explanations of the other options.</p>

## 4.4.7 Set Factory Defaults

Use the command in [Table 4.9](#) to set the factory defaults on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.9 Set Factory Defaults**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpFacDefSet -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Sets the factory defaults on the selected controller(s).

## 4.4.8 Set SAS Address

Use the command in [Table 4.10](#) to set the SAS address on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.10 Set SAS Address on Controller**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpSetSASA str[0-64] -aN
<b>Description</b>	Sets the controllers SAS address. This string must be a 64-digit hexadecimal number.

## 4.4.9 Set Time and Date on Controller

Use the command in [Table 4.11](#) to set the time and date on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.11 Set Time and Date on Controller**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpSetTime yyyyymmdd HH:mm:ss -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Sets the time and date on the controller. This command uses a 24-hour format. For example, 7 p.m. displays as 19:00:00. The order of date and time is reversible.

## 4.4.10 Display Time and Date on Controller

Use the command in [Table 4.12](#) to display the time and date on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.12 Display Time and Date on Controller**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpGetTime -aN
<b>Description</b>	Displays the time and date on the controller. This command uses a 24-hour format. For example, 7 p.m. would display as 19:00:00.

---

## 4.5 Patrol Read-Related Controller Properties

You can use the commands in this section to select the settings for Patrol Read. A Patrol Read scans the system for possible drive errors that could lead to drive failure, then takes action to correct the errors. The goal is to protect data integrity by detecting drive failure before the failure can damage data. The corrective actions depend on the virtual drive configuration and the type of errors. Patrol Read affects performance; the more iterations there are, the greater the impact.

### 4.5.1 Set Patrol Read Options

Use the command in [Table 4.13](#) on the selected controller(s) to set the Patrol Read options.

**Table 4.13 Set Patrol Read Options**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -AdpPR -Dsbl   EnblAuto   EnblMan   Start   Stop   Info -aN   -a0,1,2   -aALL</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets Patrol Read options on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>-Dsbl: Disables Patrol Read for the selected controller(s).</li><li>-EnblAuto: Enables Patrol Read automatically for the selected controller(s). This means Patrol Read will start automatically after the controller initialization is complete.</li><li>-EnblMan: Enables Patrol Read manually for the selected controller(s). This means that Patrol Read does not start automatically; it has to be started manually by selecting the <code>Start</code> command.</li><li>-Start: Starts Patrol Read for the selected controller(s).</li><li>-Stop: Stops Patrol Read for the selected controller(s).</li><li>-Info: Displays the following Patrol Read information for the selected controller(s):<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Patrol Read operation mode</li><li>• Patrol Read execution delay value</li><li>• Patrol Read status</li></ul></li></ul>

### 4.5.2 Set Patrol Read Delay Interval

Use the command in [Table 4.14](#) on the selected controller(s) to set the time between Patrol Read iterations.

**Table 4.14 Set Patrol Read Delay Interval**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpPRSetDelay -Val -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Sets the time between Patrol Read iterations on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers: -Val: Sets delay time between Patrol Read iterations. The value is time of delay in hours. A value of zero means no delay and an immediate restart.

## 4.6 BIOS-Related Properties

You can use the commands in this section to select the settings for BIOS-related options.

### 4.6.1 Set or Display Bootable Virtual Drive ID

Use the command in [Table 4.15](#) to set or display the ID of the bootable virtual drive.

**Note:** This option does not write a boot sector to the virtual drive. The operating system will not load if the boot sector is incorrect.

**Table 4.15 Bootable Virtual Drive ID**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBootDrive {-Set -Lx}   -Get -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Sets or displays the bootable virtual drive ID: -Set: Sets the virtual drive as bootable so that during the next reboot, the BIOS will look for a boot sector in the specified virtual drive. -Get: Displays the bootable virtual drive ID.

### 4.6.2 Select BIOS Status Options

Use the command in [Table 4.16](#) to set the options for the BIOS status.

**Table 4.16 Options for BIOS Status**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBIOS -Enbl -Dsb1 -Dsply  SOE   BE -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
-------------------	---



**Table 4.16 Options for BIOS Status (Cont.)**

---

<b>Description</b>	Sets BIOS options. The following are the settings you can select on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers: -Enbl, -Dsbl, -Dsply: Enables, disables or displays the BIOS status on selected controller(s). -SOE: Stops on BIOS errors during POST for selected controller(s). When set to -SOE, the BIOS stops in case of a problem with the configuration. This gives you the option to enter the configuration utility to resolve the problem. This is available only when you enable the BIOS status. -BE: Bypasses BIOS errors during POST. This is available only when you enable the BIOS status.
--------------------	---

---

## 4.7 Battery Backup Unit-Related Properties

You can use the commands in this section to select the settings for BBU-related options.

### 4.7.1 Display BBU Information

Use the command in [Table 4.17](#) to display complete information about the BBU for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.17 Display BBU Information**

---

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Displays complete information about the BBU, such as status, capacity information, design information, and properties.

---

### 4.7.2 Display BBU Status Information

Use the command in [Table 4.18](#) to display complete information about the status of the BBU, such as temperature and voltage, for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.18 Display BBU Status Information**

---

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -GetBbuStatus -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
-------------------	--

---

**Table 4.18 Display BBU Status Information (Cont.)**

---

<b>Description</b>	<p>Displays complete information about the BBU status, such as the temperature and voltage. The information displays in the following formats:</p> <p><b>BBU Status for Adapter: xx</b> Battery Type: XXXXXX(string) Voltage: xx mV Current: xx mA Temperature: xx C° Firmware Status: xx Battery state: xx</p> <p><b>Gas Gauge Status:</b> Fully Discharged: Yes/No Fully Charged: Yes/No Discharging: Yes/No Initialized: Yes/No Remaining Time Alarm: Yes/No Remaining Capacity Alarm: Yes/No Discharge Terminated: Yes/No Over Temperature: Yes/No Charging Terminated: Yes/No Over Charged: Yes/No</p> <p>Additional status information displays differently for iBBU™ and BBU.</p> <p><b>For iBBU:</b> Relative State of Charge: xx Charger System State: xx Charger System Ctrl: xx Charging Current: xx mA Absolute State of Charge: xx% Max Error: xx%</p> <p><b>For BBU:</b> Relative State of Charge: xx Charger Status: xx Remaining Capacity: xx mAh Full Charge Capacity: mAh isSOHGood: Yes/No</p>
--------------------	---

---

### **4.7.3 Display BBU Capacity**

Use the command in [Table 4.19](#) to display the BBU capacity for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.19 Display BBU Capacity Information**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -GetBbuCapacityInfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Displays BBU capacity information. The information displays in the following format: BBU Capacity Info for Adapter: x Relative State of Charge: xx% Absolute State of Charge: xx% Remaining Capacity: xx mAh Full Charge Capacity: xx mAh Run Time to Empty: xxx Min Average Time to Empty: xxx Min Average Time to Full: xxx Min Cycle Count: xx Max Error: xx%

#### 4.7.4 Display BBU Design Parameters

Use the command in [Table 4.20](#) to display BBU design parameters for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.20 Display BBU Design Parameters**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -GetBbuDesignInfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Displays information about the BBU design parameters. The information displays in the following formats: BBU Design Info for Adapter: x Date of Manufacture: mm/dd, yyyy Design Capacity: xxx mAh Design Voltage: mV Serial Number: 0xhhhh Pack Stat Configuration: 0xhhhh Manufacture Name: XXXXXX(String) Device Name: XXXXXX(String) Device Chemistry: XXXXXX(String)

#### 4.7.5 Display Current BBU Properties

Use the command in [Table 4.21](#) to display the current BBU properties for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.21 Display Current BBU Properties**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -GetBbuProperties -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Displays current properties of the BBU. The information displays in the following formats: BBU Properties for Adapter: x Auto Learn Period: xxx Sec Next Learn Time: xxxx Sec Learn Delay Interval: xx Hours Auto-Learn Mode: Warn via Event/Disabled/Enabled

## 4.7.6 Start BBU Learning Cycle

Use the command in [Table 4.22](#) to start the BBU learning cycle on the selected controller(s). A learning cycle is a battery calibration operation performed by the controller periodically (approximately every three months) to determine the condition of the battery.

**Table 4.22 Start BBU Learning Cycle**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -BbuLearn -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Starts the learning cycle on the BBU. No parameter is needed for this option.

## 4.7.7 Place Battery in Low-Power Storage Mode

Use the command in [Table 4.23](#) to place the battery into Low-Power Storage mode on the selected controller(s). This saves battery power consumption.

**Table 4.23 Place Battery in Low-Power Storage Mode**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -BbuMfgSleep -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Places the battery in Low-Power Storage mode. The battery automatically exits this state after 5 seconds.

## 4.7.8 Set BBU Properties

Use the command in [Table 4.24](#) to set the BBU properties on the selected controller(s) after reading from the file.

**Table 4.24 Set BBU Properties**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBbuCmd -SetBbuProperties -f<fileName> -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	<p>Sets the BBU properties on the selected controller(s) after reading from the file. The information displays in the following formats:</p> <pre> autoLearnPeriod = 1800Sec nextLearnTime = 12345678Sec Seconds past 1/1/2000 learnDelayInterval = 24hours Not greater than 7 days autoLearnMode = 0 0 - Enabled, 1 - Disabled, 2 - WarnViaEvent. </pre> <p>1. NOTE: You can change only two of these parameters, learnDelayInterval and autoLearnMode.</p>

## 4.8 Options for Displaying Logs Kept at Firmware Level

Use the commands in this section to select the display settings for the event log and BBU terminal log, which are kept at the firmware level.

### 4.8.1 Event Log Management

Use the command in [Table 4.25](#) to manage the event entries in the event log for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.25 Event Log Management**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpEventLog -GetEventlogInfo   -GetEvents   GetSinceShutdown   GetSinceReboot   IncludeDeleted   {GetLatest <number>} -f <filename>   Clear -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL   {GetCCIncon} -f <filename> -LX -L0,2,5... -LALL -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	<p>Manages event log entries. The following are the settings you can select on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-GetEventlogInfo: Displays overall event information such as total number of events, newest sequence number, oldest sequence number, shutdown sequence number, reboot sequence number, and clear sequence number.</li> <li>-GetEvents: Gets event log entry details. The information shown consists of total number of entries available at firmware side since the last clear and details of each entries of the error log. <i>Start_entry</i> specifies the initial event log entry when displaying the log.</li> <li>-GetSinceShutdown: Displays all of the events since last controller shutdown.</li> <li>-GetSinceReboot: Displays all of the events since last controller reboot.</li> <li>-IncludeDeleted: Displays all events, including deleted events.</li> <li>-GetLatest: Displays the latest number of events, if any exist. The event data will be writted to the file in reverse order.</li> <li>-Clear: Clears the event log for the selected controller(s).</li> <li>-GetCCIncon:</li> </ul>

## 4.8.2 Set BBU Terminal Logging

Use the command in [Table 4.26](#) to set the BBU terminal logging for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.26 Set BBU Terminal Logging**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -FwTermLog -Bbuoff   -BbuoffTemp   -Bbuon   -BbuGet   -Dsply   -Clear -aN   -a0,1,2   -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Sets BBU terminal logging options. The following are the settings you can select on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers: -Bbuoff: Turns off the BBU for firmware terminal logging. To turn off the BBU for logging, you have to shut down your system or turn off the power to the system after you run the command. -BbuoffTemp: Temporarily turns off the BBU for TTY (firmware terminal) logging. The battery will be turned on at the next reboot. -Bbuon: Turns on the BBU for TTY (firmware terminal) logging. -BbuGet: Displays the current BBU settings for TTY logging. -Dsply: Displays the TTY log (firmware terminal log) entries with details on the given controllers. The information shown consists of the total number of entries available at a firmware side. -Clear: Clears the TTY log.

## 4.9 Configuration-Related Options

You can specify the drives by using the Enclosure ID:Slot ID for SAS controllers. This assumes that all drives are connected to the controller through an enclosure. If the drives are not connected to an enclosure, it is assumed that they are connected to Enclosure 0. In this case there is no slot, so you can use the `pdlst` command to get the slot equivalent number. (This applies to all commands that use the Enclosure ID:Slot ID format.) MegaCLI expects the input in `[:S]` format for directly attached devices.

In the following options, `[E0:S0, E1:S1]` specifies the enclosure ID and slot ID for the drive.

### 4.9.1 Create a RAID Drive Group from All Unconfigured Good Drives

Use the command in [Table 4.28](#) to create one RAID drive group out of all of the unconfigured good drives, and a hot spare, if desired. This is for RAID levels 0, 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60. All free drives are used to create a new drive group and, if desired, one hot spare drive. If it is not possible

to use all of the free drives, the command will abort with a related error level. If there are drives of different capacities, the largest drive is used to make the hot spare.

**Note:** A virtual drive cannot have both SAS drives and SATA drives. Therefore, if the remaining free drives are SAS and SATA, a drive group cannot be created. The command will abort with a related error level.

**Note:** Firmware supports only 32 drives per drive group, so if there are more than 32 unconfigured good drives, MegaCLI cannot configure any of the drives, and the command will abort.

**Table 4.27 Create a Drive Group from All of the Unconfigured Drives**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -CfgLdAdd -R0 -R1 -R5 -R6[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] [WT   WB] [NORA   RA   ADRA] [Direct   Cached] [CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU] [ GHSP   DHSP] -spn x -ax   -Force
<b>Description</b>	<p>Creates one RAID drive group out of all of the unconfigured good drives, and a hot spare, if desired. This is for RAID levels 0, 5, 6, 10, 50, or 60. All free drives are used to create a new drive group and, if desired, one hot spare drive.</p> <p>-Rx[E0:S0,...]: Specifies the RAID level and the drive enclosure/slot numbers used to construct a drive group.</p> <p>-WT (Write through), WB (Write back): Selects write policy.</p> <p>-NORA (No read ahead), RA (Read ahead), ADRA (Adaptive read ahead): Selects read policy.</p> <p>-Direct, -Cached: Selects cache policy.</p> <p>[{CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU }]: Specifies whether to use write cache when the BBU is bad.</p> <p>GHSP, DHSP: Specifies that the hot spare is global or dedicated.</p> <p>-spn: Specifies the maximum number of spans that a spanned drive group can have.</p> <p>-Force: Specifies that drive coercion is used to make the capacity of the drives compatible. Drive coercion is a tool for forcing drives of varying capacities to the same capacity so they can be used in a drive group.</p>

## 4.9.2 Add RAID 0, 1, 5, or 6 Configuration

Use the command in [Table 4.28](#) to add a RAID level 0, 1, 5, or 6 configuration to the existing configuration on the selected controller. For RAID levels 10, 50, or 60, see [Section 4.9.3, “Add RAID 10, 50, or 60 Configuration.”](#)

**Table 4.28 Add RAID 0, 1, 5, or 6 Configuration**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -CfgLDAdd -R0 -R1 -R5 -R6[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] [WT   WB] [NORA   RA   ADRA] [Direct   Cached] [CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU] [-szXXXXXXXX [-szYYYYYYY [... ]]] [-strpszM] [-Hsp[E5:S5,...]] [-afterLdX] -aN</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Adds a RAID level 0, 1, 5, or 6 configuration to a specified controller. Even if no configuration is present, you have the option to write the configuration to the controller.</p> <p>Note that RAID 1 supports up to 32 drives in a single span of 16 drive groups. RAID 1 requires an even number of drives, as data from one drive is mirrored to the other drive in each RAID 1 drive group.</p> <p>-Rx[E0:S0,...]: Specifies the RAID level and the drive enclosure/slot numbers to construct a drive group.</p> <p>-WT (Write through), WB (Write back): Selects write policy.</p> <p>-NORA (No read ahead), RA (Read ahead), ADRA (Adaptive read ahead): Selects read policy.</p> <p>-Cached, -Direct: Selects cache policy.</p> <p>[{CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU }]: Specifies whether to use write cache when the BBU is bad.</p> <p>-szXXXXXXXX: Specifies the capacity for the virtual drive, where XXXX is a decimal number of Mbytes. However, the actual capacity of the virtual drive can be smaller, because the driver requires the number of blocks from the drives in each virtual drive to be aligned to the stripe size. If multiple size options are specified, CT configures the virtual drives in the order of the options entered in the command line.</p> <p>The configuration of a particular virtual drive will fail if the remaining capacity of the drive group is too small to configure the virtual drive with the specified capacity. This option can also be used to create a configuration on the free space available in the drive group.</p> <p>-strpszM: Specifies the stripe size, where the stripe size values are 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, or 1024 KBytes.</p> <p>Hsp[E5:S5,...]: Creates hot spares when you create the configuration. The new hot spares will be dedicated to the virtual drive used in creating the configuration. This option does not allow you to create global hot spares. To create global hot spares, you must use the -PdHsp command with proper subcommands.</p> <p>You can also use this option to create a configuration on the free space available in the virtual drive. You can specify which free slot should be used by specifying the -AfterLdX: This command is optional. By default, the application uses the first free slot available in the virtual drive. This option is valid only if the virtual drive is already used for configuration.</p>



### 4.9.3 Add RAID 10, 50, or 60 Configuration

Use the command in [Table 4.29](#) to add a RAID 10, RAID 50, or RAID 60 configuration to the existing configuration on the selected controller.

For RAID levels 0, 1, 5, or 6, see [Section 4.9.2, “Add RAID 0, 1, 5, or 6 Configuration.”](#)

**Table 4.29 Add RAID 10, 50, or 60 Configuration**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -CfgSpanAdd -R10 R50 R60 -Array0[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] -Array1[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] [...] [WT   WB] [NORA   RA   ADRA] [Direct   Cached] [CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU] [-szXXXXXXXX [-szYYYYYYY [... ]]] [-strpszM] [-afterLdX] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Creates a RAID level 10, 50, or 60 (spanned) configuration from the specified drive groups. Even if no configuration is present, you must use this option to write the configuration to the controller.

Note that RAID 10 supports up to eight spans with a maximum of 32 drives in each span. (There are factors, such as the type of controller, that limit the number of drives you can use.) RAID 10 requires an even number of drives, as data from one drive is mirrored to the other drive in each RAID 1 drive group. You can have an even or odd number of spans.

Multiple drive groups are specified using the `-ArrayX[E0:S0,...]` option. (Note that *X* starts from 0, not 1.) All of the drive groups must have the same number of drives. At least two drive groups must be provided. The order of options {WT |WB} {NORA | RA | ADRA} {Direct | Cached} is flexible.

The size option, `-szXXXXXXXX`, can be accepted to allow slicing in the spanned drive groups if the controller supports this feature. The `[-afterLdX]` option is accepted if the size option is accepted. CT exits and does not create a configuration if the size or the afterLd option is specified but the controller does not support slicing in the spanned drive groups.

### 4.9.4 Clear the Existing Configuration

Use the command in [Table 4.30](#) to clear the existing configuration on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.30 Clear Existing Configuration**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -CfgClr -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Clears the existing configuration.

## 4.9.5 Save the Configuration on the Controller

Use the command in [Table 4.31](#) to save the configuration for the selected controller(s) to the given filename.

**Table 4.31 Save Configuration on the Controller**

---

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -CfgSave -f FileName -aN
<b>Description</b>	Saves the configuration for the selected controller(s) to the given filename.

---

## 4.9.6 Restore the Configuration Data from File

Use the command in [Table 4.32](#) to read the configuration from the file and load it on the selected controller(s). You can restore the read/write properties and RAID configuration using hot spares.

**Table 4.32 Restore Configuration Data from File**

---

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -CfgRestore -f FileName -aN
<b>Description</b>	Reads the configuration from the file and loads it on the controller. MegaCLI can store or restore all read and write controller properties, all read and write properties for virtual drives, and the RAID configuration including hot spares. Note the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MegaCLI does not validate the setup when restoring the RAID configuration.</li><li>• The -CfgSave option stores the configuration data and controller properties in the file. Configuration data has only the device ID and sequence number information of the drives used in the configuration. The CfgRestore option will fail if the same device IDs of the drives are not present.</li></ul>

---

## 4.9.7 Manage Foreign Configuration Information

Use the command in [Table 4.33](#) to manage configurations from other controllers, called *foreign configurations*, for the selected controller(s). You can scan, preview, import, and clear foreign configurations.

**Note:** The actual status of virtual drives and drives can differ from the information displayed in the -Scan option. LSI suggests that you run -Preview before you import a foreign configuration.

**Table 4.33 Manage Foreign Configuration Information**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -CfgForeign -Scan   {-Preview   -Dsply  -Import   -Clear [FID]} -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Manages foreign configurations. The options for this command are: -Scan: Scans and displays available foreign configurations. -Preview: Provides a preview of the imported foreign configuration. The foreign configuration ID (FID) is optional. -Dsply: Displays the foreign configuration. -Import: Imports the foreign configuration. The FID is optional. -Clear [FID]: Clears the foreign configuration. The FID is optional.

## 4.9.8 Delete Specified Virtual Drive(s)

Use the command in [Table 4.34](#) to delete one, multiple, or all virtual drives on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.34 Delete Specified Virtual Drives**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -CfgLDDel -Lx -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Deletes the specified virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s). You can delete one virtual drive, multiple virtual drives, or all of the selected virtual drives on selected controller(s).

## 4.9.9 Display the Free Space

Use the command in [Table 4.35](#) to display the free space that is available to use for configuration on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.35 Display Free Space**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -CfgFreeSpaceInfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Displays all of the free space available for configuration on the selected controller(s). The information displayed includes the number of drive groups, the number of spans in each drive group, the number of free space slots in each drive group, the start block, and the size (in both blocks and megabytes) of each free space slot.

---

## 4.10 Virtual Drive-Related Options

You can use the commands in this section to select settings for the virtual drives and perform actions on them.

### 4.10.1 Display Virtual Drive Information

Use the command in [Table 4.36](#) to display virtual drive information for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.36 Display Virtual Drive Information**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -LDInfo -Lx -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL</code>
<b>Description</b>	Displays information about the virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s). This information includes the name, RAID level, RAID level qualifier, capacity in megabytes, state, stripe size, number of drives, span depth, cache policy, access policy, and ongoing activity progress, if any, including initialization, background initialization, consistency check, and reconstruction.

### 4.10.2 Change the Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters

Use the command in [Table 4.37](#) to change the cache policy and access policy for the virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.37 Change Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -LDSetProp WT   WB NORA  RA   ADRA -Cached Direct  CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU}   -RW RO Blocked   {-Name nameString}   -EnDskCache DisDskCache -Lx  -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL</code>
<b>Description</b>	Allows you to change the following virtual drive parameters: -WT (Write through), WB (Write back): Selects write policy. -NORA (No read ahead), RA (Read ahead), ADRA (Adaptive read ahead): Selects read policy. -Cached, -Direct: Selects cache policy. -CachedBadBBU NoCachedBadBBU : Specifies whether to use write cache when the BBU is bad. -RW, -RO, Blocked: Selects access policy. -EnDskCache: Enables drive cache. -DisDskCache: Disables drive cache.

### 4.10.3 Display the Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters

Use the command in [Table 4.38](#) to display cache and access parameters for the virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.38 Display Virtual Drive Cache and Access Parameters**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -LDGetProp -Cache   -Access   -Name   -DskCache -Lx -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Displays the cache and access policies of the virtual drive(s): -Cache: -Cached, Direct: Displays cache policy. -WT (Write through), WB (Write back): Selects write policy. -NORA (No read ahead), RA (Read ahead), ADRA (Adaptive read ahead): Selects read policy. -Access: -RW, -RO, Blocked: Displays access policy. -DskCache: Displays drive cache policy.

### 4.10.4 Manage Virtual Drives Initialization

Use the command in [Table 4.39](#) to manage initialization of the virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.39 Manage Virtual Drive Initialization**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -LDInit {-Start [Fast   Full]}   -Abort -ShowProg -ProgDsply -Lx -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Allows you to select the following actions for virtual drive initialization: -Start: Starts the initialization (writing 0s) on the virtual drive(s) and displays the progress (this is optional). The fast initialization option initializes the first and last 8 Mbyte areas on the virtual drive. The full option allows you to initialize the entire virtual drive. -Abort: Aborts the ongoing initialization on the virtual drive(s). -ShowProg: Displays the snapshot of the ongoing initialization, if any. -ProgDsply: Displays the progress of the ongoing initialization. The routine continues to display the progress until at least one initialization is completed or a key is pressed.

## 4.10.5 Manage a Consistency Check

Use the command in [Table 4.40](#) to manage a data consistency check (CC) on the virtual drives for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.40 Manage Consistency Check**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -LDCC -Start -Abort -ShowProg -ProgDsply -Lx -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Allows you to select the following actions for a data CC: -Start: Starts a CC on the virtual drive(s), then displays the progress (optional) and time remaining. -Abort: Aborts an ongoing CC on the virtual drive(s). -ShowProg: Displays a snapshot of an ongoing CC. -ProgDsply: Displays ongoing CC progress. The progress displays until at least one CC is completed or a key is pressed.

## 4.10.6 Manage a Background Initialization

Use the command in [Table 4.41](#) to enable, disable, or suspend background initialization (BGI), as well as display initialization progress on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.41 Manage Background Initialization**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -LDBI -Enbl -Dsbl GetSetting -ShowProg -ProgDsply -Lx -L0,1,2 -Lall -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Manages background initialization options. The following are the background initialization settings you can select on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers: -Enbl, -Dsbl: Enables or disables the background initialization on the selected controller(s). -ProgDsply: Displays an ongoing background initialization in a loop. This function completes only when all background initialization processes complete or you press a key to exit. -ShowProg: Displays the current progress value. - GetSetting: Displays current background initialization setting ( <i>Enabled</i> or <i>Disabled</i> ).

## 4.10.7 Perform a Virtual Drive Reconstruction

Use the command in [Table 4.42](#) to perform a reconstruction of the virtual drive(s) on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.42 Virtual Drive Reconstruction**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -LDRecon {-Start -Rx [Add   Rmv PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] ] }  -ShowProg -ProgDsply -Lx -aN</code>
<b>Description</b>	Controls and manages virtual drive reconstruction. The following are the virtual drive reconstruction settings you can select on a single controller: -Start: Starts a reconstruction of the selected virtual drive to a new RAID level. -Rx: Changes the RAID level of the virtual drive when you start reconstruction. You might need to add or remove a drive to make this possible. -Start -Add PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...]: Adds listed drives to the virtual drive and starts reconstruction on the selected virtual drive. -Start -Rmv PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...]: Removes one drive from the existing virtual drives and starts a reconstruction. -ShowProg: Displays a snapshot of the ongoing reconstruction process. -ProgDsply: Allows you to view the ongoing reconstruction. The routine continues to display progress until at least one reconstruction is completed or a key is pressed.

## 4.10.8 Display Information about Virtual Drives and Drives

Use the command in [Table 4.43](#) to display information about the virtual drives and drives for the selected controller(s), such as the number of virtual drives, RAID level, and drive capacity.

**Table 4.43 Display Virtual Drive and Drive Information**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -LDPDInfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL</code>
<b>Description</b>	Displays information about the present virtual drive(s) and drive(s) on the selected controller(s). Displays information including the number of virtual drives, the RAID level of the virtual drives, and drive capacity information, which includes raw capacity, coerced capacity, uncoerced capacity, and the SAS address.

## 4.10.9 Display the Number of Virtual Drives

Use the command in [Table 4.44](#) to display the number of virtual drives attached to the controller.

**Table 4.44 Display Number of Virtual Drives**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -LDGetNum -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL</code>
-------------------	--

**Table 4.44 Display Number of Virtual Drives (Cont.)**

---

<b>Description</b>	Displays the number of virtual drives attached to the controller. The return value is the number of virtual drives.
--------------------	---

---

## 4.11 Drive-Related Options

You can use the commands in this section to select settings for the drives and perform actions on them.

### 4.11.1 Display Drive Information

Use the command in [Table 4.45](#) to display information about the drives on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.45 Display Drive Information**

---

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDInfo -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Provides information about the drives connected to the enclosure and controller slot. This includes information such as the enclosure number, slot number, device ID, sequence number, drive type, capacity (if a drive), foreign state, firmware state, and inquiry data.  For SAS devices, this includes additional information such as the SAS address of the drive. For SAS expanders, this includes additional information such as the number of devices connected to the expander.

---

### 4.11.2 Set the Drive State to Online

Use the command in [Table 4.46](#) to set the state of a drive to *Online*. In an online state, the drive is working normally and is a part of a configured virtual drive.

**Table 4.46 Set Drive State to Online**

---

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDOnline -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Changes the drive state to <i>Online</i> .

---

### 4.11.3 Set the Drive State to Offline

Use the command in [Table 4.47](#) to set the state of a drive to *Offline*. In the offline state, the virtual drive is not available to the RAID controller.



**Table 4.47 Set Drive State to Offline**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDOffline -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Changes the drive state to <i>Offline</i> .

#### 4.11.4 Change the Drive State to Unconfigured Good

Use the command in [Table 4.48](#) to change the state of a drive from *Unconfigured-Bad* to *Unconfigured-Good*.

**Table 4.48 Change Drive State to Unconfigured Good**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDMakeGood -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Changes the drive state to <i>Offline</i> .

#### 4.11.5 Change Drive State

Use the command in [Table 4.49](#) to change the drive state, as it relates to hot spares, and to associate the drive to an enclosure and virtual drive for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.49 Change Drive State**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDHSP {-Set [{-Dedicated -ArrayN  -Array0,1,...}] [-EnclAffinity] [-nonRevertible] }   -Rmv -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1,...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Changes the drive state (as it relates to hot spares) and associates the drive to an enclosure and virtual drive on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers: -Set: Changes the drive state to <i>dedicated hot spare</i> for the enclosure. -Rmv: Changes the drive state to <i>ready</i> (removes the hot spare). -EnclAffinity: Associates the hot spare to a selected enclosure. -Array0: Dedicates the hot spare to a specific virtual drive.

## 4.11.6 Manage a Drive Initialization

Use the command in [Table 4.50](#) to manage a drive initialization on the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.50 Drive Initialization**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -PDClear -Start   -Stop   -ShowProg   -ProgDsply -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1....] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Manages initialization or displays initialization progress on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>-Start: Starts initialization on the selected drive(s).</li><li>-Stop: Stops an ongoing initialization on the selected drive(s).</li><li>-ShowProg: Displays the current progress percentage and time remaining for the initialization. This option is useful for running the application through scripts.</li><li>-ProgDsply: Displays the ongoing clear progress. The routine continues to display the initialization progress until at least one initialization is completed or a key is pressed.</li></ul>

## 4.11.7 Rebuild a Drive

Use the command in [Table 4.51](#) to start or stop a rebuild on a drive and display the rebuild progress. When a drive in a RAID drive group fails, you can rebuild the drive by recreating the data that was stored on the drive before it failed.

**Table 4.51 Rebuild a Drive**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -PDRbld -Start   -Stop   -ShowProg   -ProgDsply -PhysDrv [E0:S0,E1:S1....] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Manages a drive rebuild or displays the rebuild progress on a single controller, multiple controllers, or all controllers. Note that the drive must meet the capacity requirements before it can be rebuilt, and it must be part of a drive group:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>-Start: Starts a rebuild on the selected drive(s) and displays the rebuild progress (optional).</li><li>-Stop: Stops an ongoing rebuild on the selected drive(s).</li><li>-ShowProg: Displays the current progress percentage and time remaining for the rebuild. This option is useful for running the application through scripts.</li><li>-ProgDsply: Displays the ongoing rebuild progress. This routine displays the rebuild progress until at least one initialization is completed or a key is pressed.</li></ul>

## 4.11.8 Locate the Drive(s) and Activate LED

Use the command in [Table 4.52](#) to locate the drive(s) for the selected controller(s) and activate the drive activity LED.

**Table 4.52 Locate Drive and Activate LED**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDLocate -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Locates the drive(s) for the selected controller(s) and activates the drive activity LED.

## 4.11.9 Mark the Configured Drive as Missing

Use the command in [Table 4.53](#) to mark the configured drive as missing for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.53 Mark Configured Drive as Missing**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDMarkMissing -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Marks the configured drive as missing for the selected controller(s).

## 4.11.10 Display the Drives in Missing Status

Use the command in [Table 4.53](#) to mark the configured drive as missing for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.54 Display Drives in Missing Status**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDGetMissing -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Displays the drive(s) in missing status. The format is:  No      Row      Column      SizeExpected(MB) 0        x        y        zzzzzzzz ... Where <i>x</i> is the index to the drive groups, <i>y</i> is the index to the drive in that drive group, and <i>zzzzzz</i> is the minimum capacity of the drive that can be used as a replacement.

## 4.11.11 Replace the Configured Drives and Start an Automatic Rebuild

Use the command in [Table 4.55](#) to replace configured drive(s) and start an automatic rebuild of the drive for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.55 Replace Configured Drive(s) and Start Automatic Rebuild**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDReplaceMissing -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...] -ArrayX -RowY -aN
-------------------	--

**Table 4.55 Replace Configured Drive(s) and Start Automatic Rebuild (Cont.)**

---

<b>Description</b>	Replaces the configured drives that are identified as missing and then starts an automatic rebuild.
--------------------	---

---

### 4.11.12 Prepare the Unconfigured Drive for Removal

Use the command in [Table 4.56](#) to prepare the unconfigured drive(s) for removal from the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.56 Prepare Unconfigured Drive(s) for Removal**

---

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDPrpRmv [-Undo] - PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1... ] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Prepares unconfigured drive(s) for removal. The firmware will spin down this drive. The drive state is set to <i>unaffiliated</i> , which marks it as offline even though it is not a part of configuration. The <i>-Undo</i> option undoes this operation. If you select undo, the firmware marks this drive as <i>unconfigured good</i> .

---

### 4.11.13 Display Total Number of Drives

Use the command in [Table 4.57](#) to display the total number of drives attached to an controller. Drives can be attached directly or through enclosures.

**Table 4.57 Display Number of Drives Attached to an Controller**

---

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDGetNum -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Displays the total number of drives attached to an controller. Drives can be attached directly or through enclosures. The return value is the number of drives.

---

### 4.11.14 Display List of Physical Devices

Use the command in [Table 4.58](#) to display a list of the physical devices connected to the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.58 Display List of Physical Devices Attached to Controller(s)**

---

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PDLlist -aN -a0,1.. -aAll
<b>Description</b>	Displays information about all drives and other devices connected to the selected controller(s). This includes information such as the drive type, capacity (if a drive), serial number, and firmware version of the device. For SAS devices, this includes additional information such as the SAS address of the device. For SAS expanders, this includes additional information such as the number of drives connected to the expander.

---

## 4.11.15 Download Firmware to the Physical Devices

Use the command in [Table 4.58](#) to download firmware to the physical devices connected to the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.59 Download Firmware to the Physical Devices**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -PdFwDownload - -PhysDrv[E0:S0,E1:S1...] --f &lt;filename&gt; -aN -a0,1,2 -aAll</code>
<b>Description</b>	Flashes the firmware with the file specified at the command line. Firmware files used to flash the physical drive can be of any format. The CLI utility assumes that you provide a valid firmware image and flashes the same. The physical device has to do error checking. Firmware files in .dip format can be flashed with the DOS version of the command tool only.

## 4.12 Enclosure-Related Options

The commands in this section are used for enclosures.

Use the command in [Table 4.60](#) to display enclosure information for selected controller(s).

**Table 4.60 Display Enclosure Information**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -EncInfo -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL</code>
<b>Description</b>	Displays information about the enclosure for the selected controller(s).

## 4.13 Flashing the Firmware

The options in this section describe the functionality of the existing flash application. The firmware flash options do not require input from the user.

### 4.13.1 Flash the Firmware with the ROM File

Use the command in [Table 4.61](#) to flash the firmware with the ROM file specified at the command line for the selected controller(s).

**Table 4.61 Flash Firmware with ROM File**

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -AdpFwFlash -f filename [-NoSigChk] [-NoVerChk]-aN -a0,1,2 -aALL</code>
-------------------	---

**Table 4.61 Flash Firmware with ROM File (Cont.)**

---

<b>Description</b>	<p>Flashes the firmware with the ROM file specified at the command line. The <code>-NoSigChk</code> option forces the application to flash the firmware even if the check word on the file does not match the required check word for the controller. This option flashes the firmware only if the existing firmware version on the controller is lower than the version on the ROM image.</p> <p>If you specify <code>-NoVerChk</code>, also, the application flashes the controller firmware without checking the version of the firmware image. The version check applies only to the firmware (<code>APP.ROM</code>) version.</p> <p>This command also supports the “Mode 0” flash functionality. For Mode 0 flash, the controller number is not valid. There are two possible methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Select which controller to flash after the controllers are detected.</li><li>• Flash the firmware on all present controllers.</li></ul> <p>XML output data is generated by this option.</p>
--------------------	---

---

### 4.13.2 Flash the Firmware in Mode 0 with the ROM File

Use the command in [Table 4.62](#) to flash the firmware in Mode 0 with the ROM file specified at the command line for the selected controller(s). This option is for DOS only.

**Table 4.62 Flash Firmware in Mode 0 with ROM File**

---

<b>Convention</b>	<code>MegaCli -AdpM0Flash -f filename</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Flashes the firmware in Mode 0 with the ROM file listed on the command line. This option supports the Mode 0 flash functionality. For Mode 0 flash, the controller number is not valid. The method to handle this is to flash the firmware on all present controllers which are compatible with the image.</p>

---

## 4.14 SAS Topology

The commands in this section are used to display SAS topology.

Use the command in [Table 4.63](#) to display the PHY connection information for physical PHY M on the selected controller(s). Each PHY can form one side of the physical link in a connection with a PHY on a different device. The physical link contains four wires that form two differential signal pairs. One differential pair transmits signals, and the other differential pair receives signals. Both differential pairs operate simultaneously and allow concurrent data transmission in both the receive and the transmit directions. PHYs are contained within ports.

A port can contain a single PHY or can contain multiple PHYs. A narrow port contains a single PHY, and a wide port contains multiple PHYs.

**Table 4.63 Display PHY Connection Information**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -PHYInfo -phyM -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Displays PHY connection information for physical PHY M on the controller(s).

## 4.15 Diagnostic-Related Options

The commands in this section are used to run diagnostic tests.

### 4.15.1 Start Controller Diagnostics

Use the command in [Table 4.64](#) to start the controller diagnostic for a set amount of time.

**Table 4.64 Start Diagnostics Setting**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpDiag [val] -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Sets the amount of time for the controller diagnostic to run.

### 4.15.2 Start Battery Test

Use the command in [Table 4.65](#) to start the battery test. This command requires a system reboot.

**Table 4.65 Start Battery Test**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpBatTest -aN -a0,1,2 -aALL
<b>Description</b>	Starts the battery test. This command requires that you turn off the power to the system, and then turn on the power and reboot the system.

### 4.15.3 Start NVRAM Diagnostic

Use the command in [Table 4.66](#) to start the controller NVRAM diagnostic for a set amount of time. This option is for DOS only.

**Table 4.66 Start NVRAM Diagnostic**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -AdpNVRAM {-Read -Write -filename} -Clear [-StartOffset 0xXXXX] [-EndOffset 0xXXXX] aN
<b>Description</b>	Starts the NVRAM diagnostic. -Read: Reads the content in NVRAM and writes the data to file <i>filename</i> . -Write: Reads data from file <i>filename</i> and writes to NVRAM. -Clear: Writes 0 to NVRAM at the specified range from start offset to end offset. -StartOffset/-EndOffset: Specifies the start offset and/or end offset in NVRAM. If you do not use the -StartOffset and -EndOffset options, the default StartOffset is 0 and the default EndOffset is the end of actual NVRAM size.

## 4.16 Miscellaneous Options

The commands in this section are used to display various information.

### 4.16.1 Display the MegaCLI Version

Use the command in [Table 4.67](#) to display the version number of the MegaCLI utility.

**Table 4.67 Display MegaCLI Version**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -v
<b>Description</b>	Displays the version number of the MegaCLI utility.

### 4.16.2 Display Help for MegaCLI

Use the command in [Table 4.68](#) to display help information for the MegaCLI utility.

**Table 4.68 Display Help for MegaCLI**

<b>Convention</b>	MegaCli -h -Help ?
<b>Description</b>	Displays help for the MegaCLI utility.



# Chapter 5

## MegaRAID Storage Manager Overview and Installation

---

This chapter provides a brief overview of the MegaRAID Storage Manager (MSM) software and explains how to install it on the supported operating systems. This chapter has the following sections:

- [Section 5.1, “Overview”](#)
- [Section 5.2, “Hardware and Software Requirements”](#)
- [Section 5.3, “Installation”](#)
- [Section 5.4, “MegaRAID Storage Manager Support and Installation on VMWare”](#)
- [Section 5.5, “Installing and Configuring a CIM Provider”](#)
- [Section 5.6, “Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent”](#)
- [Section 5.7, “MegaRAID Storage Manager Support and Installation on Solaris 10U5 and U6 \(Both x86 and x64\)”](#)

---

## 5.1 Overview

MegaRAID Storage Manager software enables you to configure, monitor, and maintain storage configurations on LSI® SAS controllers. The MegaRAID Storage Manager graphical user interface (GUI) makes it easy for you to create and manage storage configurations.

### 5.1.1 Creating Storage Configurations

MegaRAID Storage Manager software enables you to easily configure the controllers, drives, and virtual drives on your workstation or server. The Configuration Wizard greatly simplifies the process of creating drive groups and virtual drives.

You can use the Configuration Wizard Auto Configuration mode to automatically create the best possible configuration with the available hardware. You can use the Guided Configuration mode, which asks you a few brief questions about the configuration, and then creates it for you. Or you can use the Manual Configuration mode, which gives you complete control over all aspects of the storage configuration.

The Reconstruction Wizard enables you to increase the capacity of a virtual drive and to change the RAID level of a drive group.

## 5.1.2 Monitoring Storage Devices

MegaRAID Storage Manager software displays the status of controllers, virtual drives, and drives on the workstation or server that you are monitoring. System errors and events are recorded in an event log file and are displayed on the screen. Special device icons appear on the screen to notify you of drive failures and other events that require immediate attention.

## 5.1.3 Maintaining Storage Configurations

You can use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to perform system maintenance tasks such as running patrol read operations, updating firmware, and running consistency checks on drive groups that support redundancy.

---

## 5.2 Hardware and Software Requirements

The hardware requirements for MegaRAID Storage Manager software are as follows:

- PC-compatible computer with an IA-32 (32-bit) Intel Architecture processor or an EM64T (64-bit) processor and at least 128 Mbytes of system memory (256 Mbytes recommended)
- Drive with at least 50 Mbytes available free space

The supported operating systems for the MegaRAID Storage Manager software are as follows:

- Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows XP, and Microsoft Windows Vista

- Red Hat Linux 3.0, 4.0, and 5.0
- Solaris 10 x86
- SUSE Linux/SLES 9 and 10, with latest updates and service packs
- VMWare ESX 3i

Refer to your server documentation and to the operating system documentation for more information on hardware and operating system requirements.

---

## 5.3 Installation

This section explains how to install (or reinstall) MegaRAID Storage Manager software on your workstation or server for the supported operating systems: Microsoft Windows, Red Hat Linux, and SUSE Linux.

### 5.3.1 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software on Microsoft Windows

Follow these steps if you need to install MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a system running Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Microsoft Windows XP, or Microsoft Windows Vista:

1. Insert the MegaRAID Storage Manager software installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.

If necessary, find and double-click the `setup.exe` file to start the installation program.

2. When the Welcome screen appears, click **Next**.

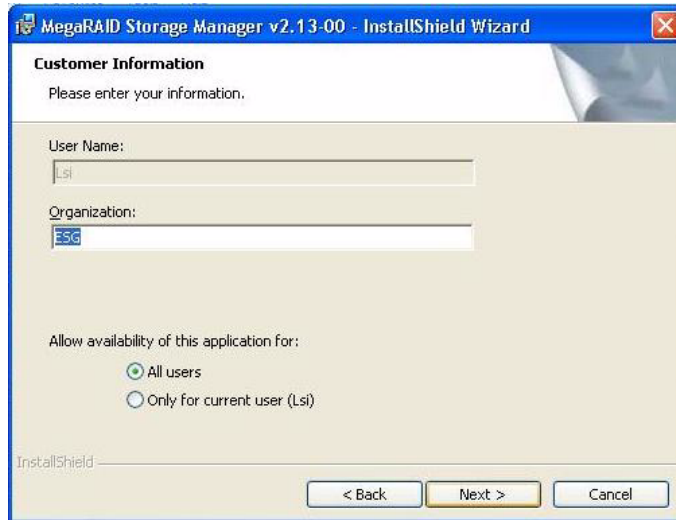
If MegaRAID Storage Manager software is already installed on this system, then an upgraded installation occurs.

3. Read the screen text and select **Modify**, **Repair**, or **Remove**.

4. When the next screen appears, read and accept the user license, and click **Next**.

The Customer Information screen appears, as shown in [Figure 5.1](#).

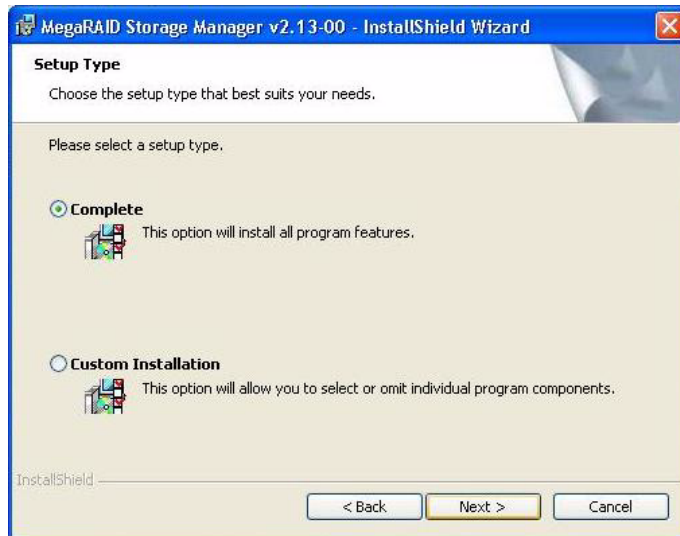
**Figure 5.1 Customer Information Screen**



5. Enter your user name and organization name. In the bottom part of the screen, select an installation option:
  - If you select **All users**, any user with administrative privileges can use this version of MegaRAID Storage Manager software to view or change storage configurations.
  - If you select **Only for current user**, the MegaRAID Storage Manager shortcuts and associated icons will be available only to the user with this user name.
6. Click **Next** to continue.
7. On the next screen, accept the default Destination Folder, or click **Change** to select a different destination folder. Click **Next** to continue.

The Setup Type screen appears, as shown in [Figure 5.2](#).

**Figure 5.2 Setup Type Screen**

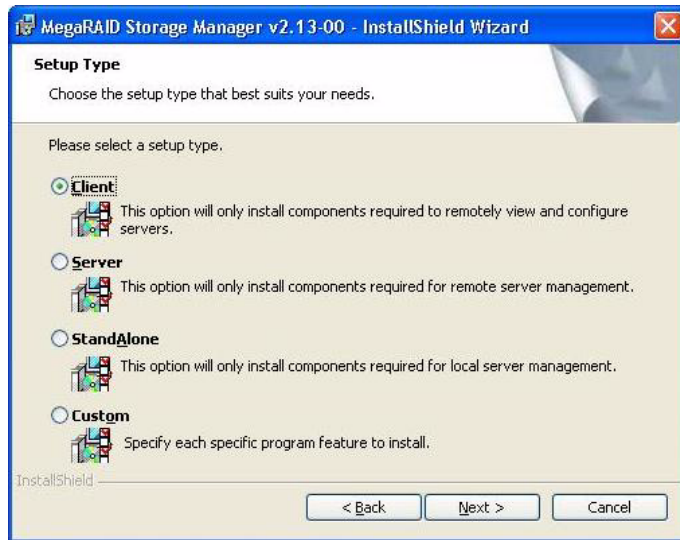


8. Select one of the Setup options. The options are fully explained in the screen text.
  - Normally, you would select **Complete** if you are installing MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a server.
  - Select **Custom Installation** if you want to select individual program components.
9. Click **Next** to continue.

If you selected **Custom Installation** as your setup option, the second Setup Type screen appears, as shown in [Figure 5.3](#).

If you select **Complete** as your setup option, the Installation Wizard is ready to install MSM. To begin installation, click on **Install** on the next screen that appears.

**Figure 5.3 Setup Type Screen**



10. Select one of the custom setup options. The options are fully explained in the screen text.

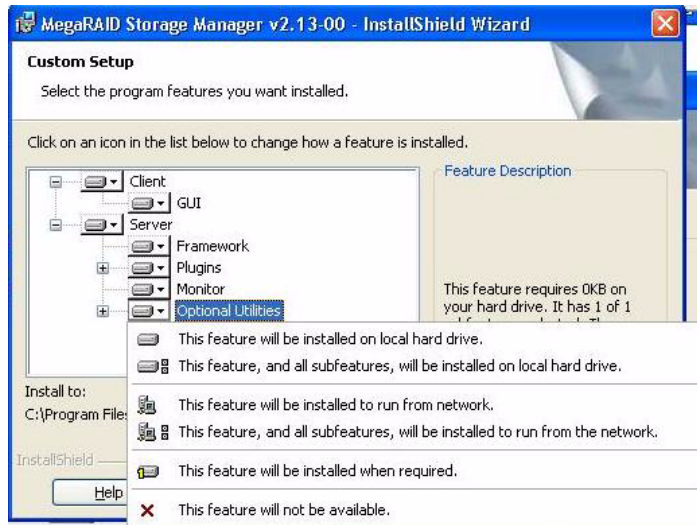
- Select **Client** if you are installing MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a PC that will be used to view and configure servers over a network. To begin installation, click on **Install** on the next screen that appears.

In the Client mode of installation, MSM installs only client-related components, such as MSM GUI, and monitor configurator. Use this mode when you want to manage and monitor servers remotely. When you install MSM in Client mode on a laptop or a desktop, you can log in to a specific server by providing the IP address.

- Select **Server** to install only those components required for remote server management. To begin installation, click on **Install** on the next screen that appears.
- Select **StandAlone** if you will use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to create and manage storage configurations on a standalone workstation. To begin installation, click on **Install** on the next screen that appears.
- Select **Custom** if you want to specify individual program features to install.

If you select **Custom**, a window listing the installation features appears, as shown in [Figure 5.4](#). Select the features you want on this screen.

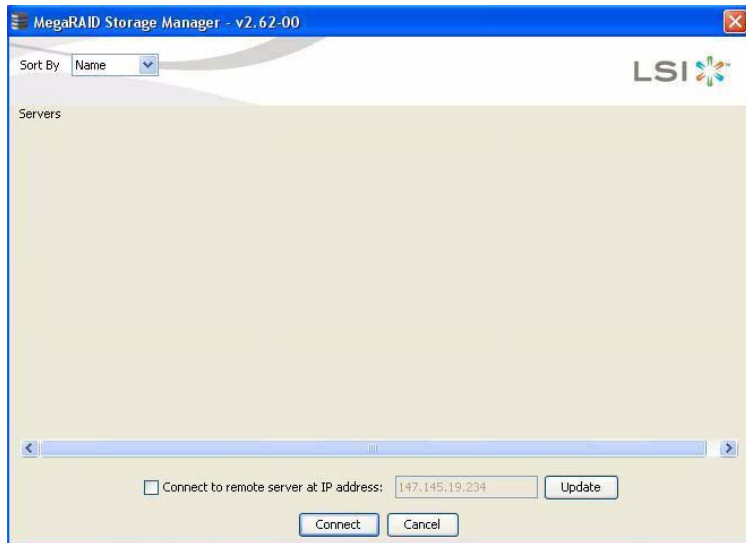
**Figure 5.4 Custom Setup Screen**



11. Click **Next** to proceed.
12. Click **Install** to install the program.
13. When the final Configuration Wizard screen appears, click **Finish**.

If you select **Client** installation for a PC used to monitor servers, and if there are no available servers with a registered framework on the local subnet (that is, servers with a complete installation of MegaRAID Storage Manager software), the server screen will appear, as shown in [Figure 5.5](#). The server screen will not list any servers. You can use this screen to manage systems remotely.

**Figure 5.5 Server Screen**



### 5.3.2 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Linux

Follow these steps if you need to install MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a system running Red Hat Linux or SUSE Linux:

1. Copy the `MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz` file to a temporary folder.
2. Untar the `MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz` file using the following command:

```
tar -zxvf MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz
```

A new disk directory is created.

3. Go to the new `disk` directory.
4. In the `disk` directory, find and read the `readme.txt` file.
5. To start the installation, enter the following command:

```
csh install.sh -a
```

If you select **Client** installation for a PC used to monitor servers, and if there are no available servers with a registered framework on the local subnet (that is, servers with a complete installation of MegaRAID Storage Manager software), the server screen appears. The server screen does



not list any servers. You can use this screen to manage systems remotely.

### 5.3.3 Linux Error Messages

The following messages may appear while you are installing MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a Linux system:

- More than one copy of MegaRAID Storage Manager software has been installed.  

This message indicates that the user has installed more than one copy of MegaRAID Storage Manager software. (This can be done by using the `rpm-force` command to install the `rpm` file directly, which is not recommended, instead of using the `install.sh` file.) In such cases, the user must uninstall all of the `rpm` files manually before installing MegaRAID Storage Manager software with the procedure listed previously.
- The version is already installed.  

This message indicates that the version of MegaRAID Storage Manager software you are trying to install is already installed on the system.
- The installed version is newer.  

This message indicates that a version of MegaRAID Storage Manager software is already installed on the system, and it is a newer version than the version you are trying to install.
- Exiting installation.  

This is the message that appears when the installation is complete.
- RPM installation failed.  

This message indicates that the installation failed for some reason. Additional message text explains the cause of the failure.

---

## 5.4 MegaRAID Storage Manager Support and Installation on VMWare

This section documents the installation of MegaRAID Storage Manager on VMWare Classic (with console operating system) and on the VMWare ESX 3i operating system.

### 5.4.1 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager for VMWare Classic

VMWare does not support any graphics components. In order to install the server component of MSM (MSM without popup and client), run the script file `ServerInstall.sh` and choose setup type “4”. For the non-interactive (silent) mode, run `./ServerInstall.sh -x`.

In order to manage MSM on a VMWare system, install MSM Client from a remote system.

### 5.4.2 Uninstalling MegaRAID Storage Manager for VMWare

To uninstall the Server Component of MSM on VMWare, use the `Uninstall` command in the Program menu or run the script `/usr/local/MegaRAID Storage Manager/uninstaller.sh`.

Note the following points:

1. A MSM upgrade is supported in this release. This release can be upgraded by future releases.
2. To shut down the MSM Framework service, run the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/vivaldiframeworkd stop
```

It is recommended that you stop the Monitor service before you stop the MSM Framework service. To stop the Monitor service run the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/mrmonitor stop
```

## 5.4.3 MegaRAID Storage Manager Support on the VMWare ESX Operating System

This section outlines the product requirements needed to support the VMWare ESX operating system. Classic VMWare includes a Service Console that is derived from the Linux 2.4 kernel, but with reduced functionality.

VMWare ESX 3i does not include a Service Console. Management is possible only through a Common Information Model (CIM) provider. It is not possible to install anything on the VMWare ESX3i system, so management is performed through MSM installed on a remote machine (Linux/Windows). See [Section 5.4.3.4, “VMWare ESX 3i Management through CIM and CMPI”](#) for more information.

The Linux installer of MSM works under console with minimal changes. Hardware RAID is currently supported in ESX 3.x.

**Note:** There is a known limitation that virtual drives that are created or deleted will not be reflected to the kernel. The workaround is to reboot the server or to run `esxcfg-rescan <vmhba#>` from COS shell.

### 5.4.3.1 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager on a VMWare ESX 3.x Server

Perform the following steps to install MegaRAID Storage Manager on a VMWare ESX 3.x Server:

1. Use Windows Client to download `2.90-01_Linux_MSM.zip` to a flash drive (USB key).
2. Remove the USB key and insert it in an ESX Server.
3. From the ESX server, at root console, type the following command to identify the USB device:

```
fdisk -l
```

4. Type the following command:

```
mount /dev/{name of your USB device} /mnt
```

5. Type the following command:

```
cd /mnt
```

6. Type the following command to copy `Linux.MSM.zip` to the `opt` folder:

```
cp 2.90-01_Linux_MSM.zip /opt
```

7. At `/opt`, uncompress `2.90-01_Linux_MSM.zip` to subdir `/opt/MSM/disks` by using the following steps:

- a. Type the following command to access the `/opt` directory:

```
cd /opt
```

- b. Type the following command:

```
unzip 2.90-01_Linux_MSM.zip
```

- c. Type the following command:

```
gunzip /MSM/MSM_linux_installer-2.90-01.tar.gz
```

- d. Type the following command:

```
cd /MSM
```

- e. Type the following command:

```
tar -vxf MSM_linux_installer-2.90-01.tar
```

- f. Type the following command:

```
cd /disk
```

- g. Type the following command:

```
./ServerInstall -x
```

`x` represents the option install server only.

- h. Type the following command to flush the cache:

```
sync; sync
```

- i. Type the following command to reboot the ESX server for the changes to take effect:

```
init 6
```

#### 5.4.3.2 Setting Permissions for User Login

Before you use the Windows operating system on the remote ESX server, you need to set permissions for user login. Perform the following steps to set permissions.

1. At the ESX root console, type the following command:

- ```
chkconfig firewall off
```
2. Type the following command to stop the firewall service:  

```
service firewall stop
```
  3. Type the following command to open the configuration file:  

```
vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```
  4. Search for the line `PermitRootLogin` and change the setting from `no` to `yes`.
  5. Save the file `sshd_config` and type the following command to exit:  

```
wq!
```
  6. Type the following command to restart the `sshd` service for the change in the configuration file to take effect:  

```
service sshd restart
```
  7. Type the following command to restart the `portmap` service (to provide an IP port):  

```
service portmap restart
```

#### 5.4.3.3 Logging into the ESX Server

Perform the following steps to use MSM from Windows to log in to the ESX server.

1. At the Window XP Client, open MSM.  
The MSM access screen appears.
2. Select or enter the ESX server IP address.  
The login dialog box appears.
3. Enter your username.
4. Enter your password.
5. Select Full access in the **Login Mode** field.
6. Click **Login** and then click **Connect**.

#### 5.4.3.4 VMWare ESX 3i Management through CIM and CMPI

Management of VMWare ESX 3i is possible only through a Common Information Model (CIM) provider. It is not possible to install anything on

the VMWare ESX3i system, so management is performed through MSM installed on a remote machine (Linux/Windows).

VMWare ESX 3i comes with the Small Footprint CIM Broker (CFCB) CIM Object Manager (or CIMOM). A CIMOM manages communication between providers, which interact with the hardware, and a CIM client, where the administrator manages the system.

SFCB supports Common Manageability Programming Interface (CMPI)-style providers. CMPI defines a common standard used to interface Manageability Instrumentation (providers, instrumentation) to Management Brokers (CIM Object Manager). CMPI standardizes Manageability Instrumentation, which allows you to write and build instrumentation once and run it in different CIM environments (on one platform).

#### **5.4.3.5 Differences in MSM for VMware ESXi**

The following are some of the differences in the MSM utility when you manage a VMWare server.

1. The following limitations apply to the system information exposed through the application:
  - Only the IP address and the Host name display.
  - The operating system type and the operating system architecture do not be display.
  - There is no support for the controller health information.

The following are the MSM screens affected:

- Initial MSM framework (hosts) discovery screen: No health information or operating system type display.
  - Server property page: Only the IP address and the Host name display; the operating system type and operating system architecture do not display.
2. Authentication support:
    - MSM allows CIMOM server authentication with the user ID and the password for VMware.
    - Access control is not supported. There is no support for full view or view only access modes. It is always full view access, and

multiple clients can have full view access at the same time on the same server.

### 3. Event Logging:

Full functionality support is available for the VMware ESXi operating system, but it works differently than the normal MSM framework mode. The event logging feature for MSM Client connected to a VMware ESXi system behaves as follows:

- There is no support for retrieving initial logs (the events that occurred before a client logs in). Only those events that occur after a client logs in appear in the event logger dialog.
- System log do not display.
- The “Save log” feature is not supported; however, the “Save Log as Text” is still supported.
- The “View Log” option allows you to view the logs saved in a text file on the event logger dialog.
- The event descriptions might not be identical to a normal MSM Client because the descriptions come from the firmware through the provider.
- There is no filtering of events, unlike Monitor Service.
- Refreshing of the MSM GUI after any updates on the firmware is slower for a client connected to VMWare ESXi hosts, compared to one connected to Windows/Linux/Solaris hosts.

### 4. Remote discovery and heartbeat mechanism:

- For networks that do not have DNS configured, the “hosts” file in the machine on which MSM is installed must be edited as follows:
  - Add an entry to map the VMWare host’s IP address with the hostname. This is for the discovery to happen correctly. In the absence of this entry, the VMWare host would be discovered as 0.0.0.0.
  - Add an entry to map its own IP address (not the loop back address) with the Hostname. This is to ensure that the Alert Event Notifications (AENs) are delivered correctly.

- For networks that has DNS configured, the “hosts” file in the machine on which MSM is installed must be edited as follows:
  - When you do the initial configurations for the VMWare host, provide the correct DNS server IP address.
  - In the `hosts` file of the machine on which MSM is installed, add an entry to map its own IP address (not the loop back address) with the Hostname. This is to ensure that the Asynchronous Event Notifications (AENs) are delivered correctly.
- 5. The VMWare hosts are discovered only when the Framework service starts on the host where MSM is installed.
- 6. It takes a while to discover the CIMOM servers. If you start the MSM client immediately after you install MSM (or restart Framework service), you will not be able to discover any hosts in the network.
- 7. The VMWare ESX3i does not support the heartbeat mechanism to let MSM know whether VMWare ESX3i is still connected. When the connection to the remote VMWare ESX3i is lost, MSM does not indicate this. The only option is to rediscover by restarting the MSM framework.
- 8. This is supported only on a full installation of MSM; standalone, client-only, and server-only modes do not support VMWare ESX3i management.
- 9. Supported on following guest operating systems:
  - Windows Server 2003 and Windows Server 2008
  - Linux RHEL 4 and 5
- 10. The following describes the status of components related to VMWare ESX3i:
  - MSM client GUI is supported.
  - There is no support for Monitor Configurator; you cannot configure the severity of the AENs.
  - There is no pop-up service support.
  - There is no email and system log support.
  - Monitor service support is not available.



11. For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, you must create the following symbolic links:

**Note:** This step is not required for MSM version 2.90-02 or later.

– `cd /usr/lib` on RHEL 5

– Search for `libcrypto`, `libssl` and `libsafs` libraries as follows:

```
ls -lrt libcrypto*, ls -lrt libssl*, ls -lrt libsafs*
```

– If the files `libcrypto.so.4`, `libssl.so.4`, and `libsafs.so.1` are missing, manually create sym links as follows:

```
ln -s libcrypto.so libcrypto.so.4
```

```
ln -s libssl.so libssl.so.4
```

```
ln -s libsafs.so libsafs.so.1
```

**Note:** If the `.so` files are not present in the `/usr/lib` directory, create a link with the existing version of the library. For example, if `libcrypto.so.6` is present and `libcrypto.so` is not, create the link as follows:

```
ln -s libcrypto.so.6 libcrypto.so.4
```

**Note:** On a 64-bit operating system, the system libraries will be present in `/usr/lib64` directory by default. However, for supporting CIM Plugin, make sure that the libraries are also present in `/usr/lib` by installing the appropriate RPMs.

#### 5.4.3.6 Running MSM on VMWare ESX 3.5i U2

If you are using VMWare ESX 3.5i U2, perform the following steps to make MSM work.

1. Open the maintenance console/shell in ESX3.
  - a. Press ALT+F1.  
A shell without any prompt appears.
  - b. Type `unsupported` (all lowercase) and press ENTER.  
Typed text is not prompted back.
  - c. Enter your password when prompted.

There is no password by default for the shell. If you have set any password from the “yellow” screen (DCUI), then use that password.

You are prompted (#) next.

2. Enable `ssh` for remote copy.
  - a. Type the following command.  

```
vi /etc/inetd.conf
```
  - b. Search for `ssh` in the file.  
By default, the line that contains `ssh` has comments.
  - c. Remove the comment by deleting the symbol `#` in front of the line.
  - d. Save the file and exit.
3. Restart the `inetd` daemon for the changes to take effect.
  - a. Type the following command to get the pid for `inetd`:  

```
ps | grep inetd
```
  - b. Type the following command to kill the `inetd` process:  

```
Kill -9 <inetd pid>
```
  - c. Type the following command to restart the `inetd` daemon:  

```
#inetd
```
4. Type the following command to use `scp` to copy `storelib` from a remote machine to the following path.  

```
/lib dir scp <user@ip:path to storelib>/libstorelib.so.2.53 /lib/libstorelib.so
```
5. Restart SFCB and check its status.
  - a. Type the following command to restart SFCB.  

```
/etc/init.d/sfcbd restart
```
  - b. Type the following command to check the status of SFCB.  

```
/etc/init.d/sfcbd status
```

**Note:** The updated Storelib library in the `/lib` directory does not persist across reboots. Each time you restart the VMWare

host, you have to follow this procedure to replace the Storelib library.

---

## 5.5 Installing and Configuring a CIM Provider

This section describes the installation and configuration of the LSI MegaRAID Common Information Model (CIM) provider. The Common Information Model offers common definitions of management information for networks, applications, and services, and allows you to exchange management information across systems throughout a network.

On a VMWare ESX3i system, management is possible only through a CIM provider and it is performed through MSM installed on a remote machine running a Linux or Windows operating system.

VMWare ESX3i comes with the Small Footprint CIM Broker (SFCB) CIM Object Manager (or CIMOM). A CIMOM manages communication between providers, which interact with the hardware, and a CIM client, where the administrator manages the system.

SFCB supports Common Manageability Programming Interface (CMPI)-style providers. CMPI defines a common standard used to interface Manageability Instrumentation (providers, instrumentation) to Management Brokers (CIM Object Manager). CMPI standardizes Manageability Instrumentation, which allows you to write and build instrumentation once and run it in different CIM environments (on one platform).

### 5.5.1 Installing a CIM SAS Storage Provider on Linux

The following procedure documents how to install and un-install the LSI CIM SAS Storage Provider on a system running on the Linux operating system.

**Note:** Uninstall all the previous versions of LsiSASProvider before you install this version. You can check all of the installed versions of LsiSASProvider by using the command

```
rpm -qa | grep LsiSASProvider.
```

Perform the following step to install a CIM SAS Storage Provider on a Linux system.

1. Install the SAS Provider using the Red Hat Package Manager (RPM) by entering the following command:

```
rpm -ivh
```

The RPM installs all of the necessary files and the Managed Object Format (MOF), and it registers the libraries. The Provider is now ready to use.

**Note:** After you install LSI CIM SAS Provider, the MOF file `LSI_SASRaid.mof` is available under the `/etc/lsi_cimprov/sas/pegasus/common` directory.

Perform the following step to un- install a CIM SAS Storage Provider on a Linux system.

1. Remove LSI CIM SAS Provider by entering the command:

```
rpm -ivh LsiSASProvider-<version>.<arch>.rpm"
```

This removes all of the necessary files, uninstalls the MOF, and unregisters the libraries. The SAS Provider is no longer on the system.

**Note:** `tog-pegasus` binaries, such as `cimmof`, `cimprovider`, and `wbemexec`, should be in `PATH` variable of `/etc/profile`, and hence, should be defined in all environments of the system.

For Pegasus version 2.5.x, perform the following steps:

1. After you install the LSI SAS Pegasus provider, verify that `libLsiSASProvider.so` and `libLsiSASProvider.so.1` are in `/usr/lib/Pegasus/providers` directory.

If these files are not present, copy `libLsiSASProvider.so.1` from `/opt/tog-pegasus/providers/lib` to `/usr/lib/Pegasus/providers` and create a symbolic link `libLsiSASProvider.so` to `/usr/lib/Pegasus/providers/libLsiSASProvider.so.1` at `/usr/bin/Pegasus/providers`.

2. Restart Pegasus CIM Server and LsiServer by performing the following steps:

- a. To start the tog-pegasus server, execute the following command:  

```
# /etc/init.d/tog-pegasus restart
```
- b. To start LsiSASSever, execute the following command:  

```
# /etc/init.d/LsiSASd restart
```

## 5.5.2 Installing a CIM SAS Storage Provider on Windows

The following procedure describes how to install and un-install the LSI CIM SAS Storage Provider on a system running on a Windows operating system.

Perform the following steps to install a CIM SAS Storage Provider on a Windows system.

1. Go To DISK1.
2. Run `setup.exe`.

The installer installs all of the necessary files and the MOF, and registers the COM dll. The Provider is now ready to use.

Perform the following steps to uninstall a CIM SAS Storage Provider on a Windows system.

1. Go to **Control Panel > Add/Remove Program**.
2. Remove the LSI WMI SAS Provider Package.

This step removes all of the necessary files, uninstalls the MOF, and unregisters the COM dll. The SAS Provider is no longer on the system.

---

## 5.6 Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent

A Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)-based management application can monitor and manage devices through SNMP extension agents. The MegaRAID SNMP subagent reports the information about the RAID controller, virtual drives, physical devices, enclosures, and other items per SNMP request. The SNMP application monitors these devices for issues that might require administrative attention.

This section describes the installation and configuration of the LSI MegaRAID SNMP agent on Linux, Solaris, and Windows operating systems.

## 5.6.1 Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent on Linux

This section explains how to install and configure SAS SNMP Agent for the SUSE Linux and Red Hat Linux operating systems.

To do this, perform the following steps.

**Note:** This procedure requires that you have Net-SNMP agent installed on the Linux machine.

**Note:** The RPM has not been created to support -U version. The RPM -U will probably fail with this RPM.

1. Install LSI SAS SNMP Agent using `rpm -ivh <sas rpm>`

**Note:** After installation, find the SAS MIB file `LSI-AdapterSAS.mib` under the `/etc/lsi_mrdsnmp/sas` directory.

RPM makes the necessary modification needed in the `snmpd.conf` file to run the agent.

**Note:** Before installation, check whether there is any `pass` command that starts with 1.3.6.1.4.1.3582 OID in `snmpd.conf`. If so, delete all of the old `pass` commands that start with 1.3.6.1.4.1.3582 OID. (This situation could occur if an earlier version of LSI SNMP Agent was installed in the system.)

The `snmpd.conf` file structure should be the same as `lsi_mrdsnmpd.conf`. For reference, a sample `conf` file (`lsi_mrdsnmpd.conf`) is in the `/etc/lsi_mrdsnmp` directory.

2. To run an SNMP query from a remote machine, add the IP address of that machine in the `snmpd.conf` file, as in this example:

```
com2sec      snmpclient  172.28.136.112    public
```

Here, the IP address of the remote machine is 172.28.136.112.

3. To receive an SNMP trap to a particular machine, add the IP address of that machine in the `com2sec` section of the `snmpd.conf` file.

For example, to get a trap in 10.0.0.144, add the following to `snmpd.conf`.

```
#      sec.name      source      community
com2sec snmpclient 10.0.0.144 public
```

4. To run/stop the `snmpd` daemon, enter the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/snmpd start/stop
```

5. To start/stop the SAS SNMP Agent daemon before issuing a SNMP query, enter the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd start/stop
```

You can check the status of the SAS SNMP Agent daemon by checked by issuing the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd status
```

6. Issue an SNMP query in this format:

```
snmpwalk -v1 -c public localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.3582
```

7. You can get the SNMP trap from local machine by issuing the following command:

```
snmptrapd -P -F "%02.2h:%02.2j TRAP#w.%q from %A %v\n"
```

**Note:** To receive a trap in a local machine with Net-SNMP version 5.3, you must modify the `snmptrapd.conf` file (generally located at `/var/net-snmp/snmptrapd.conf`). Add "disableAuthorization yes" in `snmptrapd.conf` and then execute "sudo `snmptrapd -P -F "%02.2h:%02.2j TRAP#w.%q from %A %v\n"`".

**Note:** It is assumed that `snmpd.conf` is located at `/etc/snmp` for Red Hat and `/etc` for SLES. You can change the file location from `/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd` file.

You can install SNMP without the trap functionality. To do so, set the "TRAPIND" environment variable to "N" before running RPM.

Before you install a new version, you must uninstall all previous versions.

For SLES 10, perform the following steps to run SNMP:

1. Copy `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` to `/etc/snmpd.conf`.

2. Modify the `/etc/init.d/snmpd` file and change `SNMPDCONF=/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` entry to `SNMPDCONF=/etc/snmpd.conf`.
3. Run **LSI SNMP rpm**.

## 5.6.2 Installing and Configuring an SNMP Agent on Solaris

This section explains how to install and configure SAS SNMP Agent for the Solaris operating system. To install and configure SNMP for Solaris, perform the procedures described in the following sections:

- [Section 5.6.2.1, “Prerequisites”](#)
- [Section 5.6.2.2, “Installation SNMP on Solaris”](#)
- [Section 5.6.2.3, “LSI SAS SNMP MIB Location”](#)
- [Section 5.6.2.4, “Starting, Stopping, and Checking the Status of the LSI SAS SNMP Agent”](#)
- [Section 5.6.2.5, “Configuring snmpd.conf”](#)
- [Section 5.6.2.6, “Configuring SNMP Traps”](#)
- [Section 5.6.2.7, “Uninstallin the SNMP Package”](#)

### 5.6.2.1 Prerequisites

This package requires that you have Solaris System Management Agent installed on the Solaris machine.

### 5.6.2.2 Installation SNMP on Solaris

To install SNMP for Solaris, perform the following procedure:

- Step 1. Unzip the LSI SAS SNMP Agent package.
- Step 2. Run the install script by executing the following command:

```
# ./install.sh
```

**Note:** The installation will exit if there are any existing versions of `storelib` and `sassnmp` installed on the Solaris machine.



Uninstall the existing version by using the following commands:

```
# pkgrm storelib (to uninstall storelib library)
# pkgrm sassnmp (to uninstall LSI SAS SNMP Agent)
```

### 5.6.2.3 LSI SAS SNMP MIB Location

After you install the LSI SAS SNMP Agent package, the MIB file `LSI-AdapterSAS.mib` is installed under `/etc/lsi_mrdsnmp/sas` directory.

### 5.6.2.4 Starting, Stopping, and Checking the Status of the LSI SAS SNMP Agent

The following commands are used to start, stop, restart, and check the status of the Solaris System Management Agent (`net snmpd`) daemon:

- **Start:** # `svcadm enable`  
`svc:/application/management/sma:default`
- **Stop:** # `svcadm disable`  
`svc:/application/management/sma:default`
- **Restart:** # `svcadm restart`  
`svc:/application/management/sma:default`
- **Status:** # `svcs svc:/application/management/sma:default`

**Note:** **Online** indicates that the SMA is started. **Disabled** indicates that the SMA is stopped.

The following commands are used to start, stop, restart, and check the status of the SAS SNMP Agent daemon:

- **Start:** # `/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd start`
- **Stop:** # `/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd stop`
- **Restart:** # `/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd restart`
- **Status:** # `/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd status`

### 5.6.2.5 Configuring snmpd.conf

By default, SNMP queries (walk, get) can be executed from any remote machine without any changes to the `snmpd.conf` file. To quickly add a new community and client access, perform the following steps:

1. Stop the SMA service by executing the following command:

```
# svcadm disable svc:/application/management/sma:default
```

2. Add read-only and read-write community names.

- a. Add a read-only community name and client/hostname/ipaddress under "SECTION: Access Control Setup" in the `/etc/sma/snmp/snmpd.conf` file, as shown in the following excerpt:

```
#####  
- # SECTION: Access Control Setup  
- #This section defines who is allowed to talk to your  
# running SNMP Agent.  
- # rocommunity: a SNMPv1/SNMPv2c read-only access  
- # community name  
- # arguments: community  
- # [default|hostname|network/bits] [oid]  
- # rocommunity snmpclient 172.28.157.149  
#####
```

- b. Add a readwrite community name and client/hostname/ipaddress under "SECTION: Access Control Setup" in `/etc/sma/snmp/snmpd.conf` file, as shown in the following excerpt:

```
#####  
- # SECTION: Access Control Setup  
- # This section defines who is allowed to talk to your  
# running  
- # snmp agent.  
- # rocommunity: a SNMPv1/SNMPv2c read-only access  
- # community name
```

```

- # arguments:  community
- # [default|hostname|network/bits] [oid]
- # rwcommunity snmpclient 172.28.157.149
- #####

```

3. Start the SMA service by using the following command:

```
# svcadm enable svc:/application/management/sma:default
```

**Note:** Refer to the command `man snmpd.conf` for more information about configuring the `snmpd.conf` file.

### 5.6.2.6 Configuring SNMP Traps

To receive SNMP traps, perform the following steps:

1. Stop the LSI SAS SNMP Agent by using the following command:

```
#!/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd stop
```

2. Edit the `/etc/lsi_mrdsnmp/sas/sas_TrapDestination.conf` file and add the `ipaddress` as shown in the following excerpt:

```

- #####
- # Agent Service needs the IP addresses to sent trap
- # The trap destination may be specified in this file
- # or using snmpd.conf file. Following indicators can
- # be set on "TrapDestInd" to instruct the agent to
- # pick the IPs as the destination.
- # 1 - IPs only from snmpd.conf
- # 2 - IPs from this file only
- # 3 - IPs from both the files
- #####
- TrapDestInd 2
- #####Trap Destination IP#####
- 127.0.0.1    public
- 172.28.157.149 public
- #####

```

3. Start the LSI SAS SNMP Agent by entering the following command:

```
#/etc/init.d/lsi_mrdsnmpd start
```

### 5.6.2.7 Uninstallin the SNMP Package

The `uninstall.sh` script is located under the `/etc/lsi_mrdsnmp/sas` directory. Use the following command to uninstall the package:

```
# cd /etc/lsi_mrdsnmp/sas
# ./uninstall.sh
```

## 5.6.3 Installing an SNMP Agent on Windows

This section explains how to install and configure SAS SNMP Agent for the Windows operating system.

### 5.6.3.1 Installing SNMP Agent

Perform the following steps to install SNMP Agent:

1. Run `setup.exe` from DISK1.
2. Use SNMP Manager to retrieve the SAS data (it is assumed that you have compiled `LSI-AdapterSAS.mib` file already).

The `LSI-AdapterSAS.mib` file is available under `%ProgramFiles%\LSI Corporation\SNMPAgent\SAS` directory.

3. Use a trap utility to get the traps.

**Note:** Before you install the Agent, make sure that SNMP Service is already installed in the system.

### 5.6.3.2 Installing SNMP Service for Windows

If you do not have SNMP Service installed on your system, perform the following steps to install SNMP Service for a Windows system:

1. Select **Add/Remove Programs** from Control Panel.
2. Select **Add/Remove Windows Components** in the left side of the **Add/Remove Programs** window.
3. Select **Management and Monitoring Tools**.

4. Click **Next** and follow any prompts to complete the installation procedure.

### 5.6.3.3 Configuring SNMP Service on the Server Side

Perform the following steps to configure SNMP Service on the server side.

1. Select **Administrative Tools** from Control Panel.
2. Select **Services** from the Administrative Tools window.
3. Select **SNMP Service** in the Services window.
4. Open **SNMP Service**.
5. Click the **Security** tab and make sure that `Accept SNMP Packets from any host` is selected.
6. Click the **Traps** tab and select the list of host IPs to which you want the traps to be sent with the community name.

---

## 5.7 MegaRAID Storage Manager Support and Installation on Solaris 10U5 and U6 (Both x86 and x64)

This section documents the installation of MegaRAID Storage Manager on the Solaris 10 operating system.

### 5.7.1 Installing MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Solaris 10

Follow these steps to install MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a system running Solaris 10, update 5:

1. Copy the `MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz` file to a temporary folder.
2. Untar the `MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz` file using the following command:

```
tar -zxvf MSM_linux_installer...tar.gz
```

This step creates a new disk directory.

3. Go to the new disk directory, and find and read the `readme.txt` file.
4. Enter the Bash shell.
5. Execute the command `./install.sh` present in the disk directory.

6. When prompted by the installation scripts, select `Y` to complete the installation.

## 5.7.2 Uninstalling MegaRAID Storage Manager Software for Solaris 10

Follow these steps to uninstall MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a system running Solaris 10, update 5:

- Step 1. Execute the `Uninstaller.sh` file located in `/opt/MegaRaidStorageManager` directory.
- Step 2. When prompted by the uninstallation scripts, select `Y` to complete the installation.

**Note:** To shut down MSM Framework service, run `svcadm disable -t MSMFramework`. It is advisable to stop Monitor service before stopping MSM Framework service. To stop Monitor service, run `svcadm disable -t MSMMonitor`.

**Note:** To start the Framework service, run `svcadm enable MSMFramework`. To start the monitor service run `svcadm enable MSMMonitor`.

**Note:** To check the status of MSM services execute the command `svcs -a | grep -i msm`.

# Chapter 6

## MegaRAID Storage Manager Window and Menus

---

This chapter explains how to start MegaRAID Storage Manager software and describes the MegaRAID Storage Manager window and menus. This chapter has the following sections:

- [Section 6.1, “Starting MegaRAID Storage Manager Software”](#)
  - [Section 6.2, “MegaRAID Storage Manager Window”](#)
- 

### 6.1 Starting MegaRAID Storage Manager Software

Follow these steps to start MegaRAID Storage Manager software and view the main window:

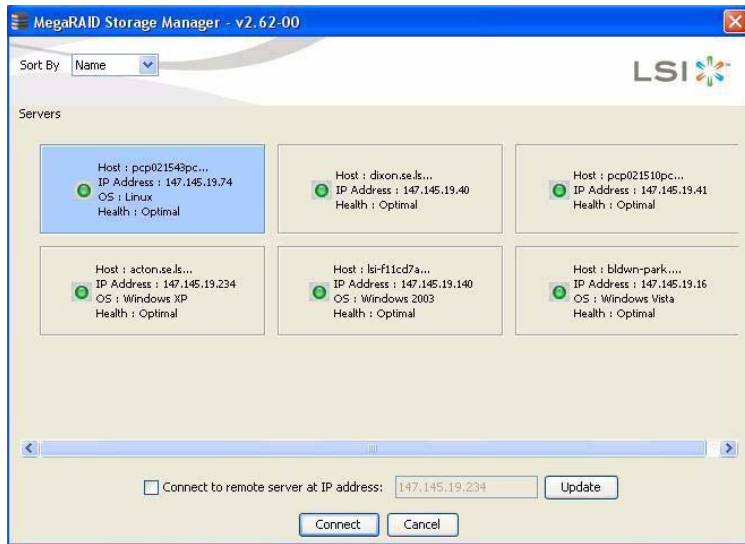
1. Start the program using the method required for your operating system environment:
  - To start MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a Microsoft Windows system, select **Start->Programs->MegaRAID Storage Manager->StartupUI**, or double-click the MegaRAID Storage Manager shortcut on the desktop.

**Note:** If a warning appears stating that Windows Firewall has blocked some features of the program, click **Unblock** to allow MegaRAID Storage Manager software to start. (The Windows Firewall sometimes blocks the operation of programs that use Java.)

- To start MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a Red Hat Linux system, select **Applications->System Tools->MegaRAID Storage Manager StartupUI**.
- To start MegaRAID Storage Manager software on a SUSE Linux/SLES system, select **Start->System->More Programs ->MegaRAID Storage Manager**.

2. When the program starts, the Select Server window appears, as shown in [Figure 6.1](#).

**Figure 6.1 Select Server Window**



If the circle in the server icon is yellow instead of green, it means that the server is running in a degraded state—for example, because a drive used in a virtual drive has failed. If the circle is red, the storage configuration in the server has failed.

**Note:** To access servers on a different subnet, type in the box at the bottom of the screen the IP address of a server in the desired subnet where the MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, and click **Update**. If you check the **Connect to remote server at: IP** address box, you can also access a standalone (remote) installation of MegaRAID Storage Manager software, if it has a network connection.

**Note:** For the VMWare CIMOM, the server button does not denote the health of the server. The button is always green regardless of the health of the system.

**Note:** The VMWare server does not show the system health and the operating system labels. It shows only the Hostname and the IP address of the server.



**Note:** When connecting to a VMWare server on a different subnet, one or more Frameworks have to be running in the subnet in order to connect to the CIMOM.

3. Double-click the icon of the server that you want to access. The Server Login window appears, as shown in [Figure 6.2](#).

**Figure 6.2 Server Login Window**



4. Select an access mode from the drop-down menu.
  - Select **Full Access** if you need to both view the current configuration and change the configuration.
  - Select **View Only** if you need to only view and monitor the configuration.

**Note:** When connected to VMWare system, the Server Login screen shows only one label for access. "Full Access". Multiple users can have full access to the VMWare server.

5. Enter your user name and password, and click **Login**.

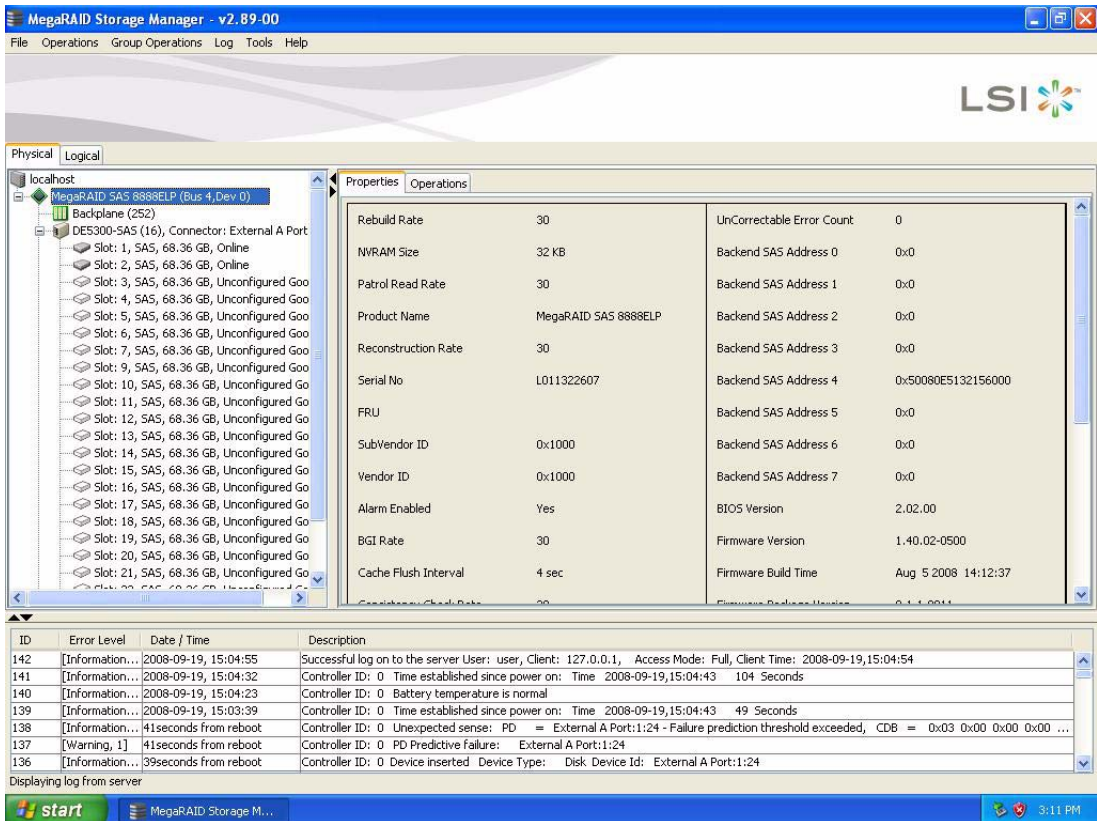
**Note:** If the computer is networked, this is the login to the computer itself, not the network login.

You must enter the root/administrator user name and password to use Full Access mode. If your user name and password are correct for the Login mode you have chosen, the main MegaRAID Storage Manager window appears.

## 6.2 MegaRAID Storage Manager Window

This section describes the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, which is shown in [Figure 6.3](#).

**Figure 6.3** Main MegaRAID Storage Manager Window













The following topics describe the panels and menu options that appear on this screen.




## 6.2.1 Physical/Logical View Panel

The left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window displays either the *Physical* view or the *Logical* view of the system and the devices in it, depending on which tab is selected.


- The *Physical* view shows the hierarchy of physical devices in the system. At the top of the hierarchy is the system itself. One or more controllers are installed in the system. The controller label identifies the MegaRAID controller, such as the MegaRAID SAS 8708ELP controller, so that you can easily differentiate between multiple controllers. Each controller has one or more ports. Drives and other devices are attached to the ports.
- The *Logical* view shows the hierarchy of controllers, virtual drives, and drive groups that are defined on the system. (Drives also appear in the *Logical* view, so you can see which drives are used by each virtual drive.)


The following icons in the left panel represent the controllers, drives, and other devices:

- System 
- Controller 
- Backplane 
- Enclosure 
- Port 
- Drive group 
- Virtual drive 
- Slot 
- Dedicated hot spare 
- Global hot spare 

- Battery backup unit (BBU) 
- Tape drive 
- CD-ROM 

**Note:** MegaRAID Storage Manager shows the icons for tape drive devices; however, no tape-related operations are supported by the utility. If these operations are required, use a separate backup application.

A red circle to the right of an icon indicates that the device has failed. For example, this icon indicates that a drive has failed: .

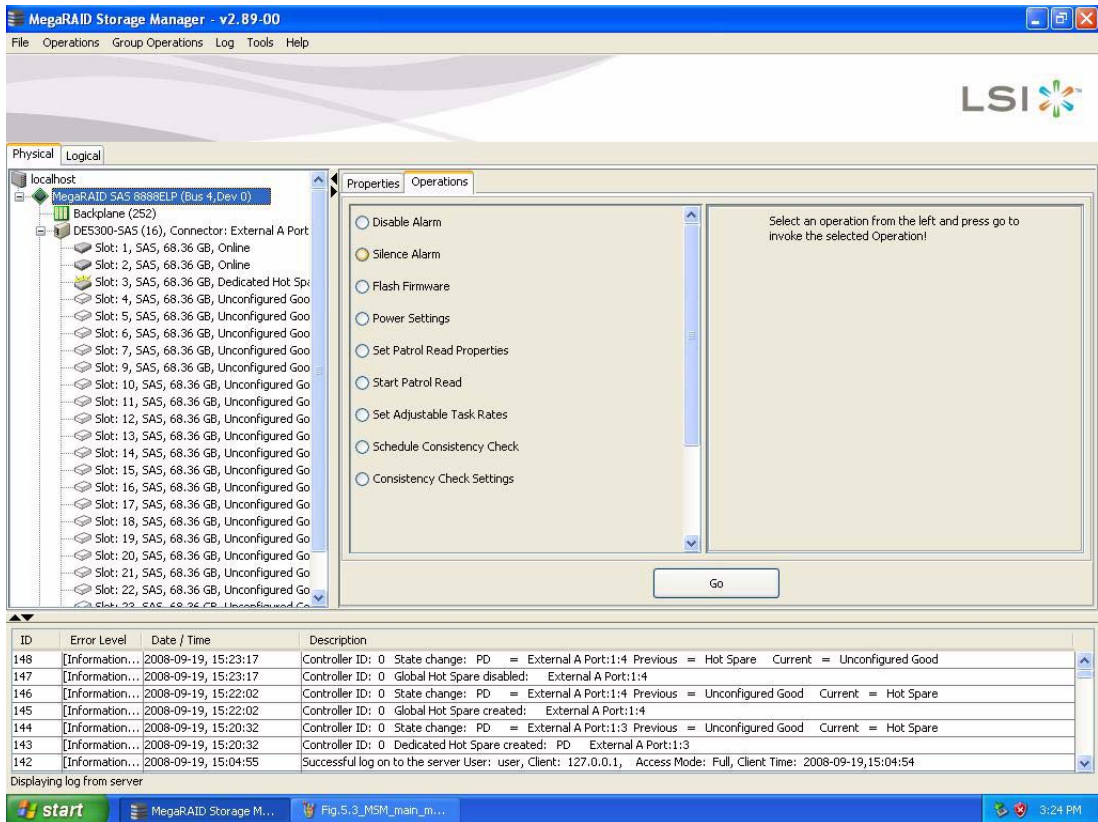
A yellow circle to the right of an icon indicates that a device is running in a degraded state. For example, this icon indicates that a virtual drive is running in a degraded state because a drive has failed: .

## 6.2.2 Properties/Operations/Graphical View Panel

The right panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window has either two tabs or three tabs, depending on which kind of device you select in the left panel.

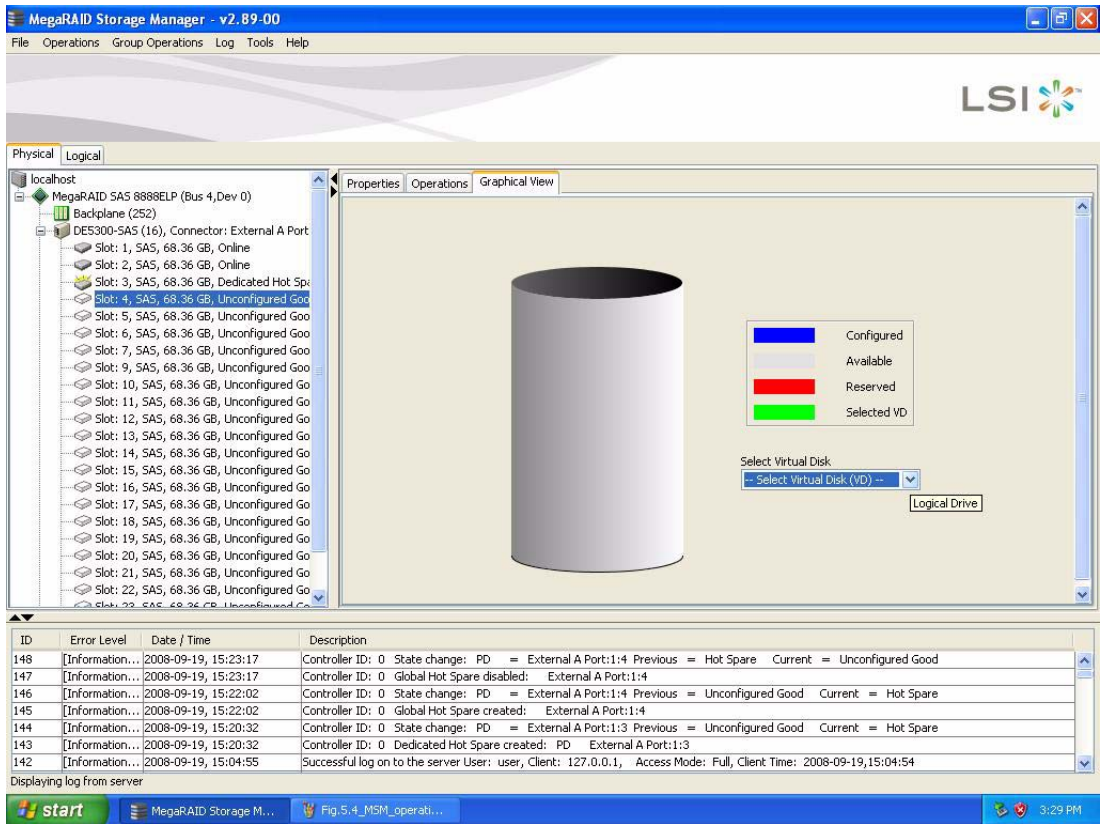
- The *Properties* tab displays information about the selected device. For example, if you select a controller icon in the left panel, the Properties tab lists information about the controller, such as the controller name, NVRAM size, and device port count. For more information, see [Section 8.3, “Monitoring Controllers,”](#) [Section 8.4, “Monitoring Drives,”](#) and [Section 8.6, “Monitoring Virtual Drives.”](#)
- The *Operations* tab lists the operations that can be performed on the device that you select in the left panel. For example, [Figure 6.4](#) shows the options that are available when you select a controller. These include enabling or silencing the alarm and running a Patrol Read. Some types of devices, such as drive groups and ports, do not have operations associated with them. For more information, see [Chapter 9, “Maintaining and Managing Storage Configurations.”](#)

**Figure 6.4 Operations Tab**



- The *Graphical View* tab can be selected in the right panel if a you select a drive, virtual drive, or drive enclosure in the left panel. In graphical view, the device's storage capacity is color coded according to the legend shown on the screen. For example, on a drive configured space is blue, available space is white, and reserved space is red, as shown in [Figure 6.5](#). For more information, see [Section 8.4, "Monitoring Drives,"](#) and [Section 8.6, "Monitoring Virtual Drives."](#)

**Figure 6.5 Graphical View Tab**



### 6.2.3 Event Log Panel

The lower part of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window displays the system event log entries, as shown in [Figure 6.3](#). New event log entries appear during the session. Each entry has an ID, an error level indicating the severity of the event, the timestamp and date, and a brief description of the event.

For more information about the event log, see [Section 8.1, “Monitoring System Events.”](#) For more information about the event log entries, see [Appendix A, “Events and Messages.”](#)

## 6.2.4 Menu Bar

Here are brief descriptions of the main selections on the MegaRAID Storage Manager menu bar. Specific menu options are described in more detail in Chapters 7, 8, and 9 of this manual.

### 6.2.4.1 File Menu

The File menu has an Exit option for exiting from the MegaRAID Storage Manager software. It also has a Rescan option for updating the display in the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. (Rescan is seldom required; the display normally updates automatically.)

### 6.2.4.2 Operations Menu

The Operations menu is available when a controller, drive, virtual drive, or battery backup unit is selected in the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. The Operations menu options vary depending on the type of device selected in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. For example, the Scan for Foreign Config option is available only when a controller is selected. The options also vary depending on the current state of the selected device. For example, if you select an offline drive, the Make Drive Online option appears in the Operations menu.

You can view the Operations selections on the main window on the Operations tab in the right panel. If an operation requires user inputs before it can be executed, it appears in the Operations tab but not in the Operations menu. A device-specific Operations menu pops up if you right-click a device icon in the left panel.

Configuration options are also available. This is where you access the Configuration Wizard and other configuration-related commands. To access the other configuration commands, select the controller in the left panel, and then select **Operations-> Configuration**.

### 6.2.4.3 Group Operations Menu

The Group Operations menu options include Check Consistency, Show Progress, and Initialize.

#### 6.2.4.4 Tools Menu

On the Tools menu you can select **Tools->Configure->Configure Alerts** to access the Event Configuration Notification screen, which you can use to set the alert delivery rules, event severity levels, exceptions, and email settings. For more information, see [Section 8.2, “Configuring Alert Notifications.”](#)

#### 6.2.4.5 Log Menu

The Log menu includes options for saving and clearing the message log. For more information, see [Appendix A, “Events and Messages.”](#)

#### 6.2.4.6 Help Menu

On the Help menu you can select **Help->Help** to view the MegaRAID Storage Manager online help file. You can select **Help->About** to view version information for the MegaRAID Storage Manager software.

Note: When you use the MegaRAID Storage Manager online help, you may see a warning message that Internet Explorer has restricted the file from showing active content. If this warning appears, click on the active content warning bar and enable the active content.

Note: If you are using the Linux operating system, you must install Firefox<sup>®</sup> or Mozilla<sup>®</sup> for the MegaRAID Storage Manager online help to display.

Note: When connected to the VMWare server, only the IP address and the hostname information display. The other information, such as the operating system name, version, and architecture do not display.



# Chapter 7

## Configuration

---

You use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to create and modify storage configurations on LSI SAS controllers. These controllers support RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60 storage configurations. To learn more about RAID and RAID levels, see [Chapter 2, “Introduction to RAID.”](#)

The Reconstruction Wizard allows you to easily change RAID levels or to expand or reduce the capacity of existing virtual drives.

**Note:** You cannot create or modify a storage configuration unless you are logged on to a server with administrator privileges.

This chapter explains how to use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to perform the following configuration tasks:

- [Section 7.1, “Creating a New Storage Configuration”](#)
- [Section 7.2, “Adding Hot Spare Drives”](#)
- [Section 7.3, “Changing Adjustable Task Rates”](#)
- [Section 7.4, “Changing Power Settings”](#)
- [Section 7.5, “Changing Virtual Drive Properties”](#)
- [Section 7.6, “Changing a Virtual Drive Configuration”](#)
- [Section 7.7, “Deleting a Virtual Drive”](#)
- [Section 7.8, “Saving a Storage Configuration to Drive”](#)
- [Section 7.9, “Clearing a Storage Configuration from a Controller”](#)
- [Section 7.10, “Adding a Saved Storage Configuration”](#)

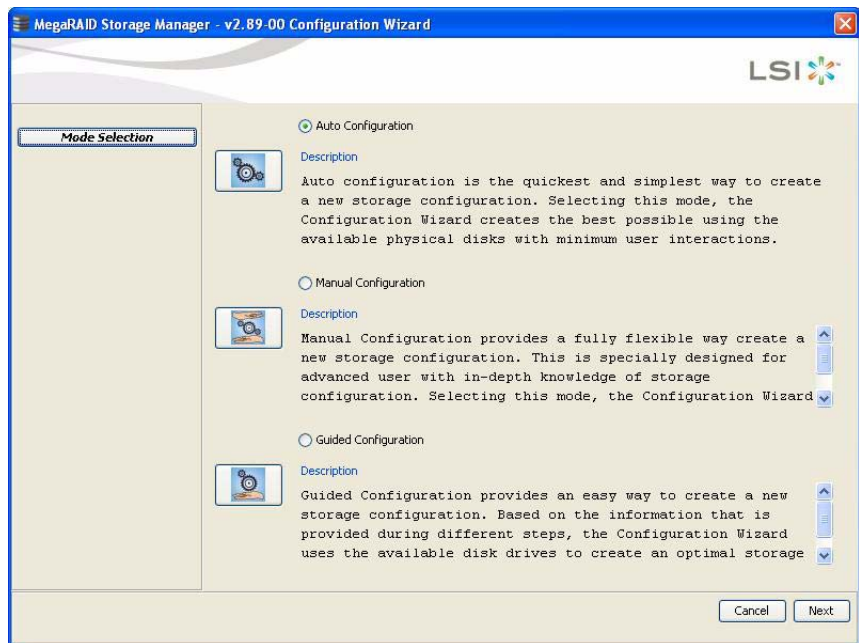
## 7.1 Creating a New Storage Configuration

You can use the MegaRAID Storage Manager Configuration Wizard to create new storage configurations on systems with LSI SAS controllers.

To open the MegaRAID Storage Manager Configuration Wizard, select a controller in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window and then select **Operations->Configuration->Configuration Wizard**.

Figure 7.1 shows the first Configuration Wizard screen.

**Figure 7.1 First Configuration Wizard Screen**



The menu lists three configuration modes:

- **Auto Configuration** automatically creates an optimal configuration from the available drives.
- **Manual Configuration** gives you the greatest level of control in creating a new virtual drive.

- **Guided Configuration** asks you a few simple questions about what kind of configuration you want and then automatically creates it from the available drives.

**Note:** To create a RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 6 configuration, you can use Auto, Guided, or Manual mode. To create a RAID 10, RAID 50, or RAID 60 configuration, you must use the Manual Configuration mode.

The following subsections explain how to use the Configuration Wizard to create storage configurations:

- [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters”](#)
- [Section 7.1.2, “Using Auto Configuration”](#)
- [Section 7.1.3, “Using Guided Configuration”](#)
- [Section 7.1.4, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 0”](#)
- [Section 7.1.5, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 1”](#)
- [Section 7.1.6, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 5”](#)
- [Section 7.1.7, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 6”](#)
- [Section 7.1.8, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 10”](#)
- [Section 7.1.9, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 50”](#)
- [Section 7.1.10, “Using Manual Configuration: RAID 60”](#)

## 7.1.1 Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters

This section describes the Virtual Drive Parameters that you can set when you use the Guided Configuration or Manual Configuration modes of the Configuration Wizard. You should change these parameters only if you have a specific reason for doing so. It is usually best to leave them at their default settings.

- **Stripe Size:** Stripe sizes of 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, and 1024 Kbytes are supported. For more information, see the *striping* Glossary entry. The default is 64 Kbytes.
- **Read Policy:** Specify the read policy for this virtual drive:
  - ◇ *Always read ahead:* Read ahead capability allows the controller to read sequentially ahead of requested data and to store the additional data in cache memory, anticipating

that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data.

- ◇ *No read ahead*: Disables the read ahead capability. This is the default.
- ◇ *Adaptive read ahead*: When selected, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to *No read ahead*.

- **Write Policy:** Specify the write policy for this virtual drive:

- ◇ *Write back*: In this mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. This is the default.
- ◇ *Write through*: In this mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction.

Note: The Write Policy depends on the status of the battery backup unit (BBU). If the BBU is not present or is bad, then the Write Policy will be Write through.

- **IO Policy:** The IO policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.

- ◇ *Cached IO*: In this mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory. This is the default.
- ◇ *Direct IO*: In this mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to the cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory.

Cached IO provides faster processing, and Direct IO ensures that the cache and the host contain the same data.

- **Access Policy:** Select the type of data access that is allowed for this virtual drive.

- ◇ *Read/Write*: Allow read/write access. This is the default.
- ◇ *Read Only*: Allow read-only access.
- ◇ *Blocked*: Do not allow access.

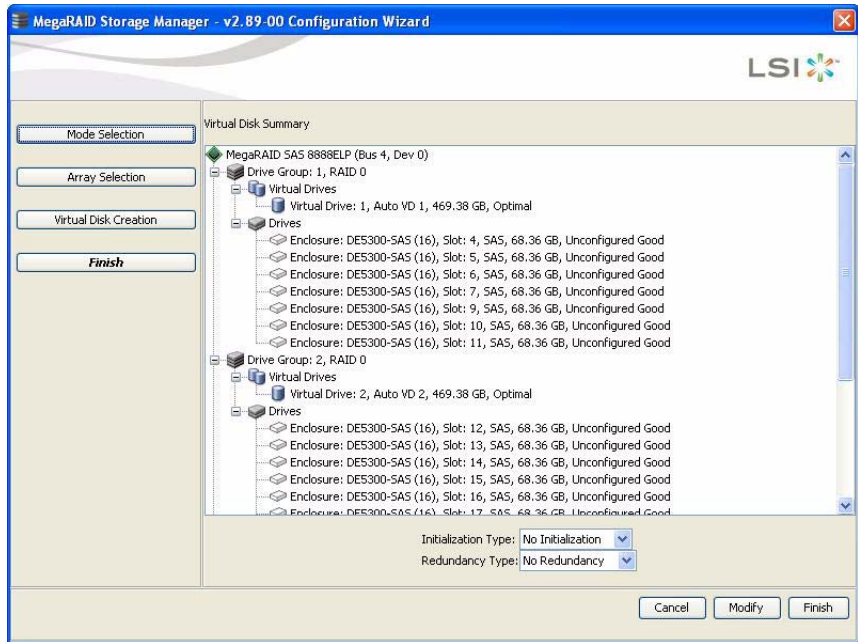
- **Disk Cache Policy:** Select a cache setting for this drive:
  - ◇ *Enable:* Enable the disk cache.
  - ◇ *Disable:* Disable the disk cache.
  - ◇ *Unchanged:* Leave the current disk cache policy unchanged. This is the default.
- **Init State:** Specify the background initialization status:
  - ◇ *No Initialization:* The new configuration is not initialized and the existing data on the drives is not overwritten. This is the default.
  - ◇ *Fast Initialization:* The firmware quickly writes zeroes to the first and last 8-Mbyte regions of the new virtual drive and then completes the initialization in the background. This allows you to start writing data to the virtual drive immediately.
  - ◇ *Full Initialization:* A complete initialization is done on the new configuration. You cannot write data to the new virtual drive until the initialization is complete. This may take a long time if the drives are large.

## 7.1.2 Using Auto Configuration

Auto Configuration is the quickest and simplest way to create a new storage configuration. When you select Auto Configuration mode on the first Configuration Wizard screen, the Configuration Wizard creates the best configuration possible using the available drives.

[Figure 7.2](#) shows the Auto Configuration screen.

**Figure 7.2 Auto Configuration Screen**



Follow these steps to create a new storage configuration in Auto Configuration mode:

1. Select an initialization option from the drop-down menu at the bottom of the window:
  - **No Initialization:** The new configuration is not initialized, and the existing data on the drives is not overwritten.
  - **Fast Initialization:** MegaRAID Storage Manager software quickly writes zeroes to the first and last 10 Mbyte regions of the new virtual drive and then completes the initialization in the background. This allows you to start writing data to the virtual drive immediately.
  - **Full Initialization:** A complete initialization is done on the new configuration. You cannot write data to the new virtual drive until the initialization is complete. This may take a long time if the drives are large.
2. Select a redundancy option from the drop-down menu at the bottom of the Auto Configuration window:

- **No Redundancy:** The new configuration will have no data redundancy (RAID 0). If a drive in the configuration fails, all data will be lost.
  - **With Redundancy:** The new configuration will have data redundancy, either through parity data (RAID 5 and RAID 6) or mirrored data (RAID 1). If a drive fails, the data is still protected.
3. (Optional) Click **Modify** if you want to change to Manual Configuration mode so that you can modify the suggested Auto Configuration.

When you click **Modify**, the Virtual Drive Creation screen appears.

- a. Select the new virtual drive, and click **Reclaim**.  
A message warns that you are about to delete the virtual drive.
  - b. Click next to a drive group in the list to select the new drive group from the Arrays list, and then change the virtual drive parameters as needed.
4. Click **Finish** to accept and complete the configuration.

The new storage configuration will be created and initialized (unless you selected **No Initialization**).

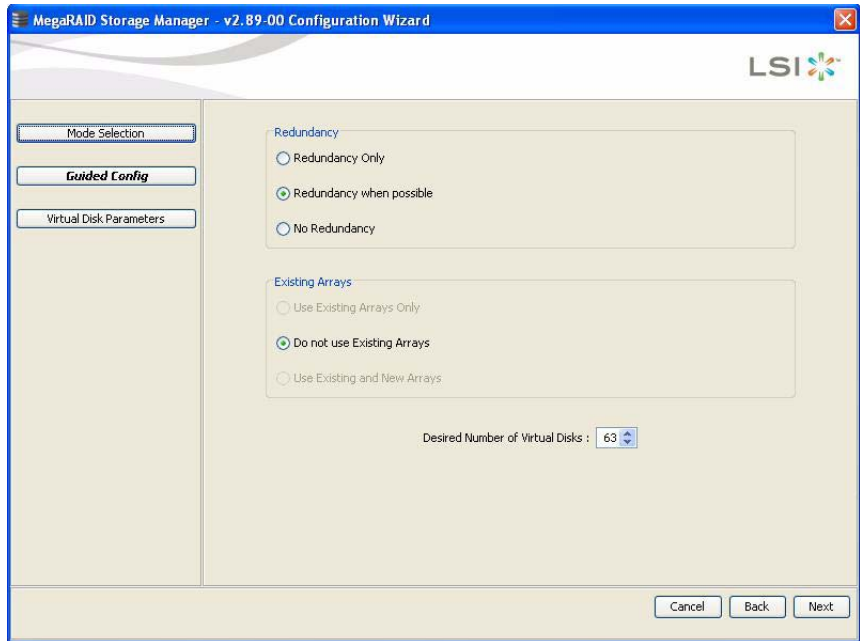
Note: If you create a large configuration using drives that are in powersave mode, it could take several minutes to spin up the drives. A progress bar appears as the drives spin up. If any of the selected unconfigured drives fail to spin up, a box appears to identify the drive or drives.

### 7.1.3 Using Guided Configuration

Guided Configuration provides an easy way to create a new storage configuration. Based on the information that is provided, the Configuration Wizard uses the available drives to create an optimal storage configuration.

[Figure 7.3](#) shows the first screen that appears when you select Guided Configuration.

**Figure 7.3 First Guided Configuration Screen**



Follow these steps to create a new storage configuration in Guided Configuration mode:

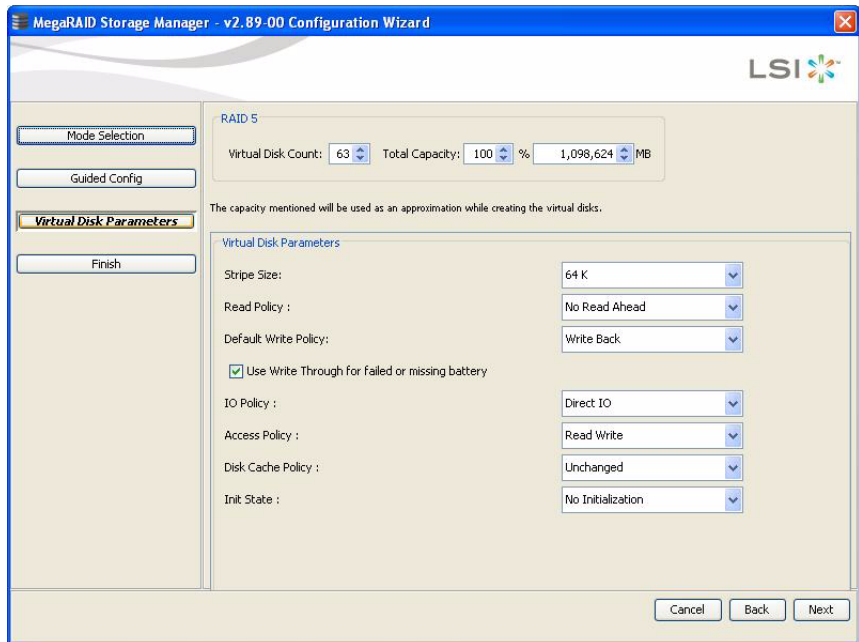
1. Select a redundancy option at the top of the Guided Configuration window:
  - **Redundancy Only:** Create a configuration only if redundancy (RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 6) is possible.
  - **Redundancy when possible:** Create a redundant configuration if possible. Otherwise, create a non-redundant configuration.
  - **No Redundancy:** Create a non-redundant configuration.
2. Choose whether you want to use existing drive groups in the new virtual drive. The options are:
  - **Use Existing Arrays Only**
  - **Do not Use Existing Arrays**
  - **Use Existing and New Arrays**

The first and third options are disabled if there are no available existing drive groups.



3. Select a maximum number of virtual drives to be created. The Configuration Wizard might not be able to create as many virtual drives as you want, depending on the current configuration and the number of virtual drives that have already been created.
4. Click **Next** to continue to the next window, as shown in [Figure 7.4](#).

**Figure 7.4 Second Guided Configuration Screen**



5. Change the default virtual drive parameters in this window, if needed.  
In the top section of the window you can specify the number of virtual drives to create. You can also choose to use less than the full capacity of this drive group for the virtual drive(s). (You could do this to leave capacity available for other virtual drives that you create later.) To learn about the Stripe Size and other virtual drive parameters, see [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters,”](#) page 7-3.
6. Click **Next** to continue to the next window.  
The VD Summary screen appears.
7. Check the configuration that you have just defined.

8. Click **Finish** to accept and complete the configuration.

If you want to change something, click **Back** to return to the previous windows.

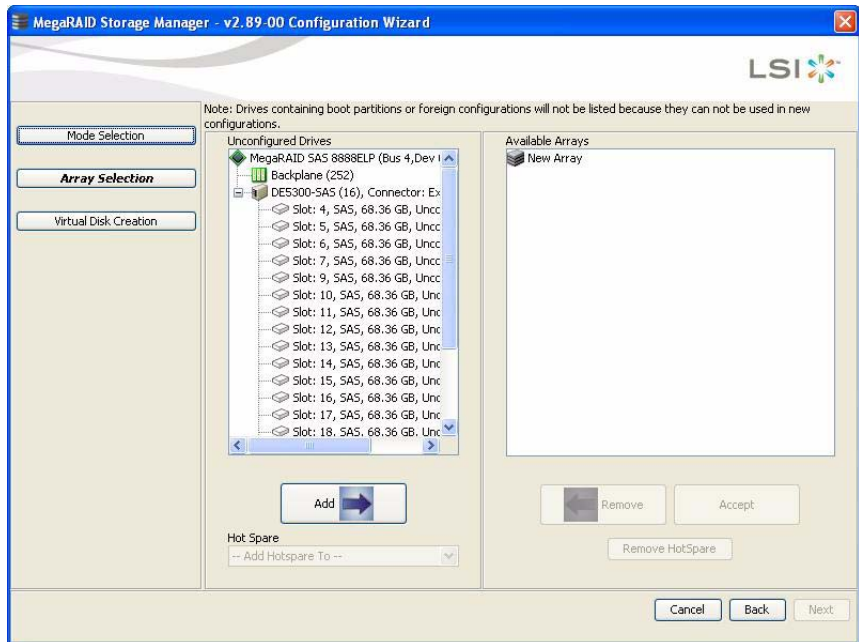
**Note:** If you create a large configuration using drives that are in powersave mode, it could take several minutes to spin up the drives. A progress bar displays as the drives spin up. If any of the selected unconfigured drives fail to spin up, a box appears to identify the drive(s).

## 7.1.4 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 0

Follow these steps to create a RAID 0 storage configuration using the Manual Configuration mode of the Configuration Wizard.

Figure 7.5 shows the first screen that appears when you select Manual Configuration.

**Figure 7.5 First Manual Configuration Screen**



1. In the first Manual Configuration window, select two or more available drives in the left panel and move them to the right panel.

To select non-consecutive drives in the list, click on a drive, and then click the **Add** (right arrow) button to move the selected drive to the right panel. Do this for each drive you want to add to the drive group.

To select two or more consecutive drives in the list, hold down the SHIFT key and click on a drive. Then click on another drive in the list. This selects the two drives and any drives between those two drives. Click the **Add** (right arrow) button to move the selected drives to the right panel.

Note: MegaRAID Storage Manager software does not allow you to select the drive on which the operating system is installed or any other drives that are already part of a configuration.

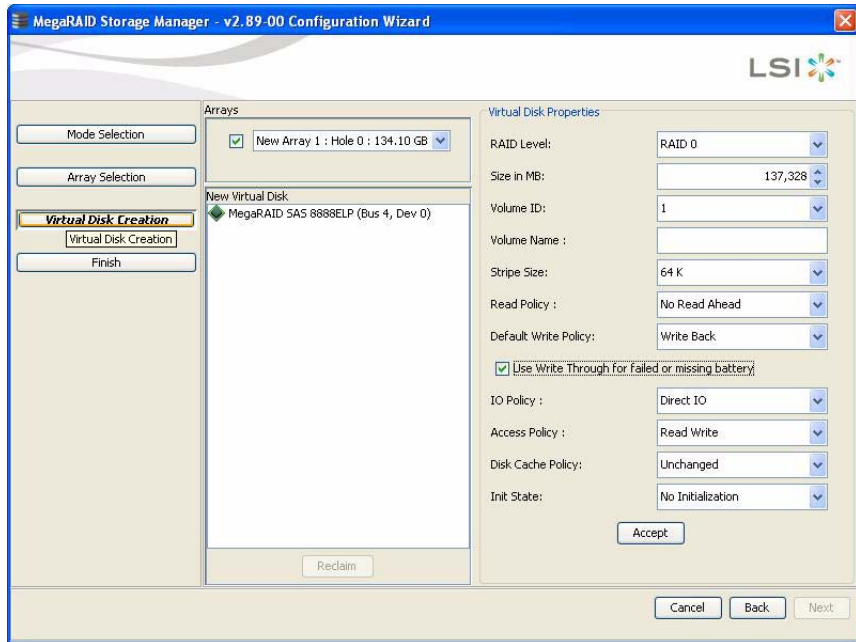
2. Click **Accept** to accept these drives for the new RAID 0 drive group.

Note: To remove a single drive from a proposed new drive group, select the drive icon in the right panel and click the **Remove** (left arrow) button.

3. Click **Next**.

The Configuration Wizard window used to define virtual drives appears, as shown in [Figure 7.6](#).

**Figure 7.6 Manual Configuration – Defining a Virtual Drive**



The *Arrays* menu lists the new drive group that you just defined, plus any existing drive groups with holes (free space) that could be used for a new configuration.

4. From the *Arrays* menu, select the drive group to use for the new virtual drive.
5. In the right panel, select **RAID 0** as the RAID level.
6. (Optional) Set *Size in MB* to a lower number if you do not want to use the entire available capacity for the new virtual drive.
7. (Optional) Change the other settings under Virtual Drive Properties, if necessary. For more information, see [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters.”](#)
8. Click **Accept** to accept the configuration of the new virtual drive.

**Note:** Click the **Reclaim** button if you want to undo a virtual drive that you just defined. (For more information, see the *reclaim virtual drive* entry in the Glossary.)

9. Click **Next** to continue with the configuration procedure.

The Virtual Drive Summary window appears. It displays information about the newly created virtual drive.

10. Review the configuration.
11. (Optional) If you want to make changes to the virtual drive, click **Back** to return to the previous page, select the virtual drive, and click **Reclaim**.

This step deletes the virtual drive and lets you create and define a new virtual drive.

12. Click **Finish** to accept the configuration and start the initialization process (unless you selected **No Initialization** earlier).

Note: If you create a large configuration using drives that are in powersave mode, it could take several minutes to spin up the drives. A progress bar appears as the drives spin up. If any of the selected unconfigured drives fail to spin up, a box appears to identify the drive or drives.

## 7.1.5 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 1

Follow these steps to create a RAID 1 storage configuration using the Manual Configuration mode of the Configuration Wizard:

1. In the first Manual Configuration window, shown in [Figure 7.5](#), select two available drives in the left panel.

To select non-consecutive drives in the list, click on a drive. Then click the **Add** (right arrow) button to move the selected drive to the right panel. Do this for each drive you want to add to the drive group.

To select two or more consecutive drives in the list, hold the SHIFT key down and click on the drives. Then click the **Add** (right arrow) button to move the selected drives to the right panel.

Note: MegaRAID Storage Manager software does not allow you to select the drive on which the operating system is installed or any other drives that are already part of a configuration.

2. Click **Accept** to accept these drives for the new RAID 1 drive group.
3. If you want additional drives in the RAID 1 virtual drive, select two more drives for another RAID 1 drive group, click the **Add** button, and click **Accept**.

**Note:** A RAID 1 virtual drive can contain up to 16 drive groups and up to 32 drives in a single span. (Other factors, such as the type of controller, can limit the number of drives.) You must use two drives in each RAID 1 drive group in the span, and an even number of drives in the span.

4. Repeat [step 3](#) until you have made all of the drive groups that you want.

5. Click **Next**.

The Configuration Wizard window used to define virtual drives appears, as shown in [Figure 7.6](#).

The *Arrays* menu lists the new drive group(s) that you just defined, plus any existing drive groups with holes (free space) that could be used for a new configuration.

6. Select the drive group(s) to use for the new virtual drive.
7. In the right panel, select RAID 1 as the RAID level.
8. (Optional) Set *Size in MB* to a lower number if you do not want to use the entire available capacity for the new virtual drive.
9. (Optional) Change the other Virtual Drive Properties, if necessary. For more information, see [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters.”](#)
10. Click **Accept** to accept the configuration of the new virtual drive.

**Note:** Click the **Reclaim** button if you want to undo a virtual drive that you just defined. (For more information, see the *reclaim virtual drive* entry in the Glossary.)

11. Click **Next** to continue with the configuration procedure.

The Virtual Drive Summary window appears. The window shows information about the newly created virtual drive.

12. Review the configuration.
13. (Optional) If you want to make changes to the virtual drive, click **Back** to return to the previous page, select the virtual drive, and click **Reclaim**.

This step deletes the virtual drive and lets you create and define a new virtual drive.

14. Click **Finish** to accept the configuration and start the initialization process (unless you selected **No Initialization** earlier).

## 7.1.6 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 5

Follow these steps to create a RAID 5 configuration using the Manual Configuration mode of the Configuration Wizard:

1. In the first Manual Configuration window, shown in [Figure 7.5](#), select three or more available drives in the left panel.

To select non-consecutive drives in the list, click on a drive. Then click the **Add** (right arrow) button to move the selected drive to the right panel. Do this for each drive you want to add to the drive group.

To select three or more consecutive drives in the list, hold the SHIFT key down and click on the drives. Then click the **Add** (right arrow) button to move the selected drives to the right panel.

**Note:** MegaRAID Storage Manager software does not allow you to select the drive on which the operating system is installed or any other drives that are already part of a configuration.

2. Click **Accept** to accept these drives for the new RAID 5 drive group.
3. Click **Next**.

The Configuration Wizard window used to define virtual drives appears, as shown in [Figure 7.6](#).

The *Arrays* menu lists the new drive group(s) that you just defined, plus any existing drive groups with holes (free space) that could be used for a new configuration.

4. Select the drive group to use for the new virtual drive.
5. In the right panel, select RAID 5 as the RAID level.
6. (Optional) Set *Size in MB* to a lower number if you do not want to use the entire available capacity for the new virtual drive.
7. (Optional) Change the other Virtual Drive Properties, if necessary. For more information, see [Section 7.1.1, "Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters."](#)
8. Click **Accept** to accept the configuration of the new virtual drive.

**Note:** Click the **Reclaim** button if you want to undo a virtual drive that you just defined. (For more information, see the *reclaim virtual drive* in the Glossary.)

9. Click **Next** to continue with the configuration procedure.

The Virtual Drive Summary window appears. This window displays information about the newly created virtual drive.

10. Review the configuration.

11. (Optional) If you want to make changes to the virtual drive, click **Back** to return to the previous page, select the virtual drive, and click **Reclaim**.

This step deletes the virtual drive and lets you create and define a new virtual drive.

12. Click **Finish** to accept the configuration and start the initialization process (unless you selected **No Initialization** earlier).

**Note:** If you create a large configuration using drives that are in powersave mode, it could take several minutes to spin up the drives. A progress bar displays as the drives spin up. If any of the selected unconfigured drives fail to spin up, a box appears to identify the drive or drives.

## 7.1.7 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 6

Follow these steps to create a RAID 6 configuration using the Manual Configuration mode of the Configuration Wizard:

1. In the first Manual Configuration window, shown in [Figure 7.5](#), select three or more available drives in the left panel.

To select non-consecutive drives in the list, click on a drive. Then click the **Add** (right arrow) button to move the selected drive to the right panel. Do this for each drive you want to add to the drive group.

To select three or more consecutive drives in the list, hold the SHIFT key down and click on the drives. Then click the **Add** (right arrow) button to move the selected drives to the right panel.

**Note:** MegaRAID Storage Manager software does not allow you to select the drive on which the operating system is installed or any other drives that are already part of a configuration.



2. Click **Accept** to accept these drives for the new RAID 6 drive group.
3. Click **Next**.

The Configuration Wizard window used to define virtual drives appears, as shown in [Figure 7.6](#).

The *Arrays* menu lists the new drive group(s) that you just defined, plus any existing drive groups with holes (free space) that could be used for a new configuration.

4. Select the drive group to use for the new virtual drive.
5. In the right panel, select RAID 6 as the RAID level.
6. (Optional) Set *Size in MB* to a lower number if you do not want to use the entire available capacity for the new virtual drive.
7. (Optional) Change the other Virtual Drive Properties, if necessary. For more information, see [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters.”](#)
8. Click **Accept** to accept the configuration of the new virtual drive.

**Note:** Click the **Reclaim** button if you want to undo a virtual drive that you just defined. (For more information, see the *reclaim virtual drive* entry in the Glossary.)

9. Click **Next** to continue with the configuration procedure.  
The Virtual Drive Summary window appears. This window shows information about the newly created virtual drive.
10. Review the configuration.
11. (Optional) If you want to make changes to the virtual drive, click **Back** to return to the previous page, select the virtual drive, and click **Reclaim**.

This step deletes the virtual drive and lets you create and define a new virtual drive.

12. Click **Finish** to accept the configuration and start the initialization process (unless you selected **No Initialization** earlier).

**Note:** If you create a large configuration using drives that are in powersave mode, it could take several minutes to spin up the drives. A progress bar displays as the drives spin up. If any of the selected unconfigured drives fail to spin up, a box appears to identify the drive or drives.

## 7.1.8 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 10

Follow these steps to create a RAID 10 storage configuration using the Manual Configuration mode of the Configuration Wizard:

1. In the first Manual Configuration window, shown in [Figure 7.5](#), select two available drives in the left panel.

To select unconfigured, non-consecutive drives in the list, click on a drive. Then click the **Add** (right arrow) button to move the selected drive to the right panel. Do this for each drive you want to add to the drive group.

To select two or more consecutive drives in the list, hold the SHIFT key down and click on the drives. Then click the **Add** (right arrow) button to move the selected drives to the right panel.

2. Click **Accept** to accept the drives for a new RAID 1 drive group.
3. Select two more drives for a second RAID 1 drive group, and click **Accept**.
4. If you want additional drives in the RAID 10 virtual drive, select two more drives for another RAID 1 drive group, click the **Add** button, and click **Accept**.

**Note:** RAID 10 supports a maximum of eight spans, with up to 32 drives per span. (Other factors, such as the type of controller, can limit the number of drives.) You must use an even number of drives in each RAID 1 drive group in the span. You can have an even or odd number of spans.

5. Repeat [step 3](#) until you have made all of the drive groups that you want.
6. Click **Next**.

The Configuration Wizard window used to define virtual drives appears, as shown in [Figure 7.6](#).

The *Arrays* menu lists the new drive groups that you just defined, plus any existing drive groups with holes (free space) that you can use for a new configuration.

7. In the left panel, click the boxes next to two drive groups under the *Arrays* menu to select two RAID 1 drive groups.
8. In the right panel, select RAID 10 as the RAID level.

9. (Optional) Set *Size in MB* to a lower number if you do not want to use the entire available capacity for the new virtual drive.
10. (Optional) Change the other settings under Virtual Drive Properties, if necessary. For more information, see [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters.”](#)
11. Click **Accept** to accept the configuration of the new virtual drive.

Note: Click the **Reclaim** button if you want to undo a virtual drive that you just defined. (For more information, see the *reclaim virtual drive* entry in the Glossary.)

12. Click **Next** to continue with the configuration procedure.  
The Virtual Drive Summary window appears. It displays information about the newly created virtual drive.
13. Review the configuration.
14. (Optional) If you want to make changes to the virtual drive, click **Back** to return to the previous page, select the virtual drive, and click **Reclaim**.

This step deletes the virtual drive and lets you create and define a new virtual drive.

15. Click **Finish** to accept the configuration and start the initialization process (unless you selected **No Initialization** earlier).

Note: If you create a large configuration using drives that are in powersave mode, it could take several minutes to spin up the drives. A progress bar appears as the drives spin up. If any of the selected unconfigured drives fail to spin up, a box appears to identify the drive or drives.

## 7.1.9 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 50

Follow these steps to create a RAID 50 storage configuration using the Manual Configuration mode of the Configuration Wizard:

1. In the first Manual Configuration window, shown in [Figure 7.5](#), select three or more available drives in the left panel. Click the **Right Arrow** button to move the selected drives to the right panel.
2. Click **Accept** to accept these drives for a new RAID 5 drive group.

3. Select more drives for a second RAID 5 drive group, and click **Accept**.

4. Click **Next**.

The next Configuration Wizard window appears, as shown in [Figure 7.6](#).

The *Arrays* menu lists the new drive groups that you just defined, plus any existing drive groups with holes (free space) that could be used for a new configuration.

5. In the left panel, select the two RAID 5 drive groups from the menu.
6. In the right panel, select RAID 50 as the RAID level.
7. (Optional) Set *Size (in MB)* to a lower number if you do not want to use the entire available capacity for the new virtual drive.
8. (Optional) Change the other Virtual Drive Properties, if necessary. For more information, see [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters.”](#)
9. Click **Accept** to accept the configuration of the new virtual drive.

**Note:** Click the **Reclaim** button if you want to undo a virtual drive that you just defined. (For more information, see the *reclaim virtual drive* entry in the Glossary.)

10. Click **Next** to continue with the configuration procedure.

The Virtual Drive Summary window appears. This window displays information about the newly created virtual drive.

11. Review the configuration.
12. (Optional) If you want to make changes to the virtual drive, click **Back** to return to the previous page, select the virtual drive, and click **Reclaim**.

This step deletes the virtual drive and lets you create and define a new virtual drive.

13. Click **Finish** to accept the configuration and start the initialization process (unless you selected **No Initialization** earlier).

**Note:** If you create a large configuration using drives that are in powersave mode, it could take several minutes to spin up the drives. A progress bar displays as the drives spin up.

If any of the selected unconfigured drives fail to spin up, a box appears to identify the drive or drives.

## 7.1.10 Using Manual Configuration: RAID 60

Follow these steps to create a RAID 60 storage configuration using the Manual Configuration mode of the Configuration Wizard:

1. In the first Manual Configuration window, shown in [Figure 7.5](#), select three or more available drives in the left panel. Click the **Right Arrow** button to move the selected drives to the right panel.
2. Click **Accept** to accept these drives for a new RAID 6 drive group.
3. Select more drives for a second RAID 6 drive group, and click **Accept**.
4. Click **Next**.

The next Configuration Wizard window appears, as shown in [Figure 7.6](#).

The *Arrays* menu lists the new drive groups that you just defined, plus any existing drive groups with holes (free space) that could be used for a new configuration.

5. In the left panel, select the two RAID 6 drive groups from the menu.
6. In the right panel, select RAID 60 as the RAID level.
7. (Optional) Set *Size (in MB)* to a lower number if you do not want to use the entire available capacity for the new virtual drive.
8. (Optional) Change the other Virtual Drive Properties, if necessary. For more information, see [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters.”](#)
9. Click **Accept** to accept the configuration of the new virtual drive.

**Note:** Click the **Reclaim** button if you want to undo a virtual drive that you just defined. (For more information, see the *reclaim virtual drive* entry in the Glossary.)

10. Click **Next** to continue with the configuration procedure.

The Virtual Drive Summary window appears. This window displays information about the newly created virtual drive.

11. Review the configuration.

12. (Optional) If you want to make changes to the virtual drive, click **Back** to return to the previous page, select the virtual drive, and click **Reclaim**.

This step deletes the virtual drive and lets you create and define a new virtual drive.

13. Click **Finish** to accept the configuration and start the initialization process (unless you selected **No Initialization** earlier).

Note: If you create a large configuration using drives that are in powersave mode, it could take several minutes to spin up the drives. A progress bar displays as the drives spin up. If any of the selected unconfigured drives fail to spin up, a box appears to identify the drive or drives.

---

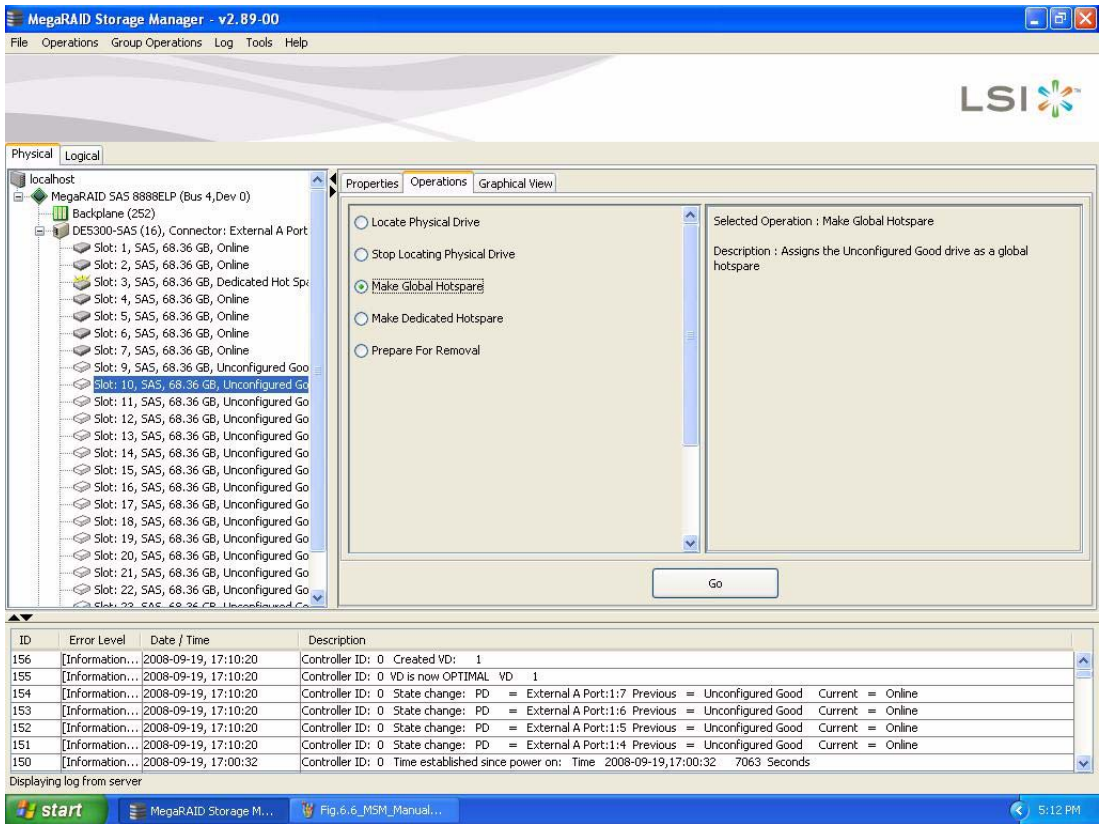
## 7.2 Adding Hot Spare Drives

Hot spares are drives that are available to automatically replace failed drives in a RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, or RAID 60 virtual drive. *Dedicated hot spares* can be used to replace failed drives in a selected drive group only. *Global hot spares* are available to any virtual drive on a specific controller.

To add a dedicated or global hot spare drive, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Physical View** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and select the icon of an unused drive.  
For each drive, the screen displays the port number, enclosure number, slot number, drive state, drive capacity, and drive manufacturer.
2. In the right panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, select the **Operations** tab.
3. Select **Make Dedicated Hotspare** or **Make Global Hotspare**, as shown in [Figure 7.7](#).

**Figure 7.7 Creating a Global Hot Spare**



4. If you selected **Make Dedicated Hotspare**, select a drive group from the list that appears in the right frame. The hot spare will be dedicated to the drive group that you select.

If you selected **Make Global Hotspare**, skip this step and go to [step 5](#). The hot spare will be available to any virtual drive on a specific controller.

5. Click **Go** to create the hot spare.

The drive state for the drive changes to hot spare.

**Note:** The size of the drive to be assigned as a dedicated hot spare should be equal to or greater than the other drives in the drive group.

---

## 7.3 Changing Adjustable Task Rates

Follow these steps if you need to change the adjustable rates for rebuilds, and other system tasks that run in the background:

**Note:** LSI recommends that you leave the adjustable task rates at their default settings to achieve the best system performance. If you raise the task rates above the defaults, foreground tasks will run more slowly and it may seem that the system is not responding. If you lower the task rates below the defaults, rebuilds and other background tasks may run very slowly and may not complete within a reasonable time. If you decide to change the values, record the original default value here so you can restore them later, if necessary:

**Rebuild Rate:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Background Initialization (BGI) Rate:** \_\_\_\_\_

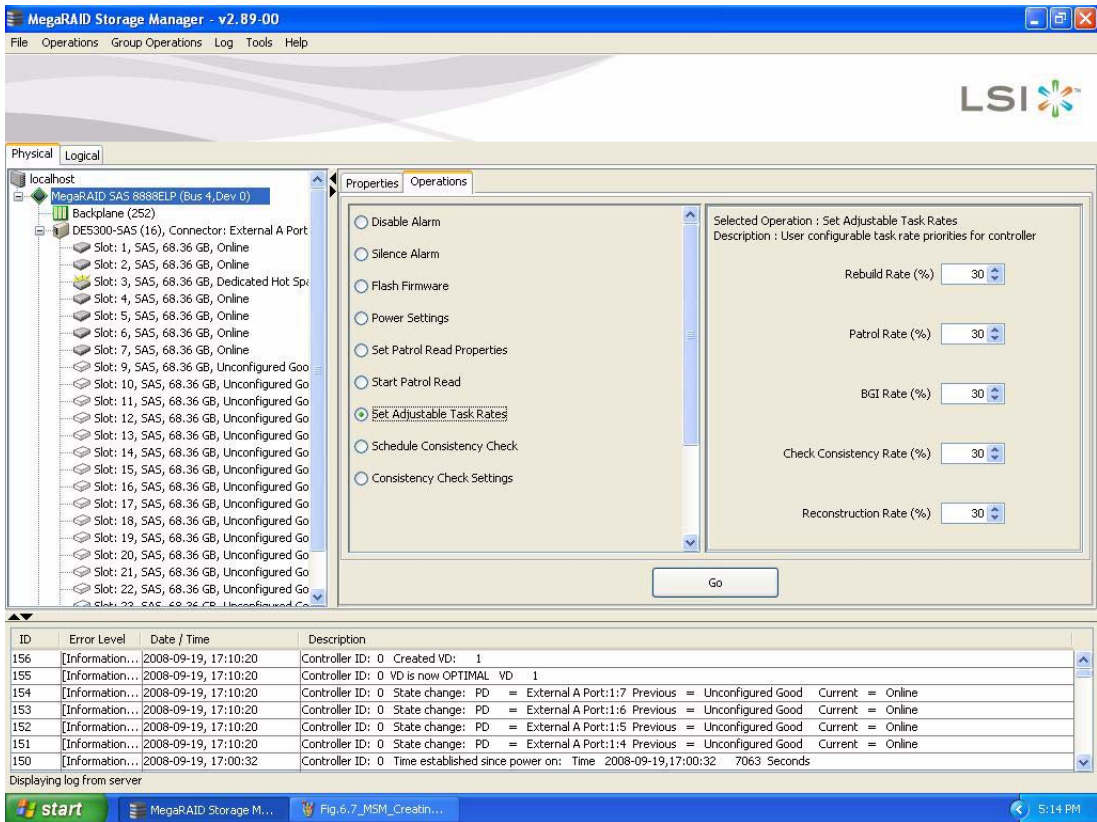
**Check Consistency Rate:** \_\_\_\_\_

1. Select the **Physical View** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and select a controller icon.
2. In the right panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, select the **Operations** tab, and select **Set Adjustable Task Rates**.

The default task rates appear in the right panel, as shown in [Figure 7.8](#).



**Figure 7.8 Set Adjustable Task Rates**



3. Enter changes, as needed, to the task rates for Rebuild Rate, Background Initialization (BGI) Rate (for fast initialization), and Check Consistency Rate (for consistency checks). Each task rate can be set from 0 to 100. The higher the number, the faster the activity will run in the background, possibly impacting other system tasks.
4. Click **Go** to accept the new task rates.
5. When the warning message appears, click **OK** to confirm that you want to change the task rates.

---

## 7.4 Changing Power Settings

The RAID controller includes Dimmer Switch™ technology that conserves energy by placing certain unused drives into powersave mode. You can use the **Power Settings** field to choose whether to allow unconfigured drives to enter powersave mode.

When this option is selected, unconfigured drives may be spun down. When not selected, these drives are not spun down. The controller will automatically spin up drives from powersave mode whenever necessary. The powersave option is not selected by default. You have to select it to enable spin-down of drives.

**Note:** If your controller does not support this option, the **Power Settings** field does not display.

Follow these steps if you need to change the powersave setting.

1. Select the **Physical View** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and select a controller icon.
2. In the right panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, select the **Operations** tab, and select **Power Settings**.

[Figure 7.8](#) displays the **Operations** menu and the **Power Settings** field.

3. Click **Go** to allow unconfigured drives to enter powersave mode.

Your power settings are saved and the screen is refreshed so that the **Operations** tab is selected, but no operations are selected. On the device menu in the left panel of the physical view screen, the nodes for the unconfigured good drives that are spun down appear - **Powersave** after their status.

If you go back to the **Power Settings** operation, the checkbox displays the saved setting.

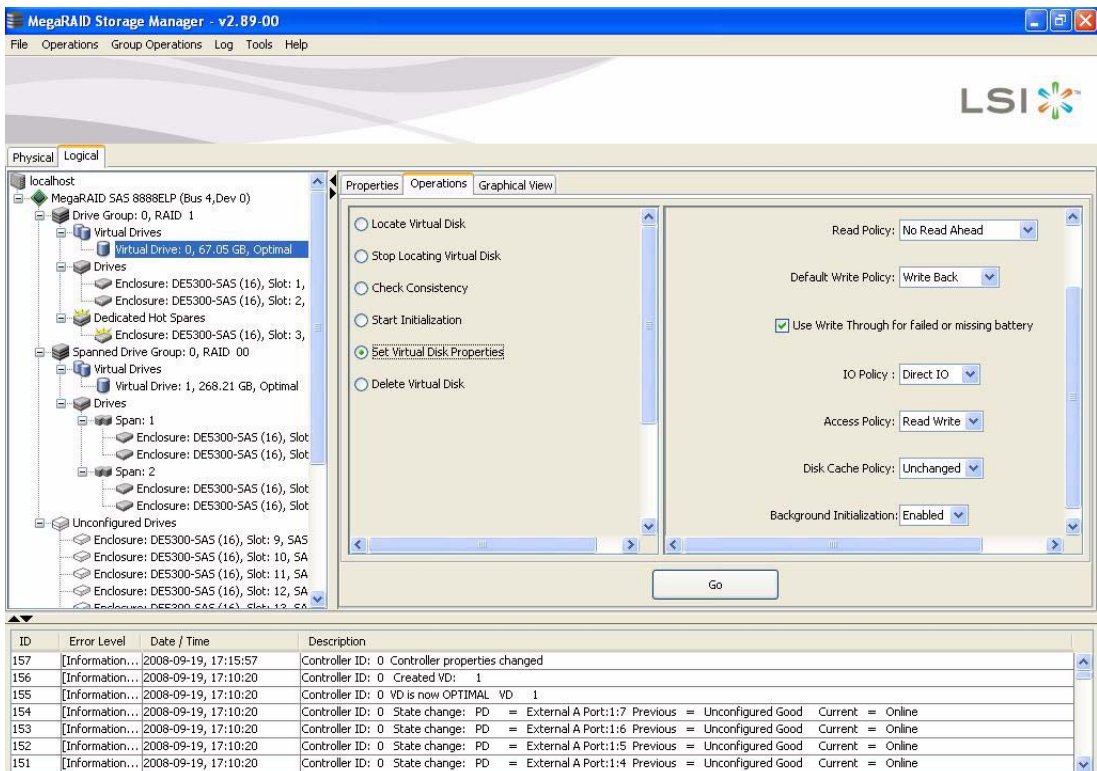
## 7.5 Changing Virtual Drive Properties

You can change a virtual drive's Read Policy, Write Policy, and other properties at any time after the virtual drive is created. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Logical** view tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. Select a virtual drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
3. In the right panel, select the **Operations** tab, and then select **Set Virtual Drive Properties**.

A list of Virtual Drive Properties appears in the right panel, as shown in [Figure 7.9](#).

**Figure 7.9 Set Virtual Drive Properties**



4. Change the virtual drive properties as needed in the right panel. For information on these properties, see [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters,”](#) page 7-3.
5. Click **Go** to accept the changes.

---

## 7.6 Changing a Virtual Drive Configuration

You can use the MegaRAID Storage Manager Reconstruction Wizard to change the configuration of a virtual drive.

**Caution:** Be sure to back up the data on the virtual drive before you change its configuration.

The Reconstruction Wizard allows you to change a virtual drive configuration by adding drives to the virtual drive, removing drives from it, or changing its RAID level.

**Note:** You cannot change the configuration of a RAID 10, or RAID 50, or RAID 60 virtual drive. You cannot change a RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 6 configuration if two or more virtual drives are defined on a single drive group. (The *Logical* view tab shows which drive groups and drives are used by each virtual drive.)

Perform the following steps to access the Reconstruction Wizard options:

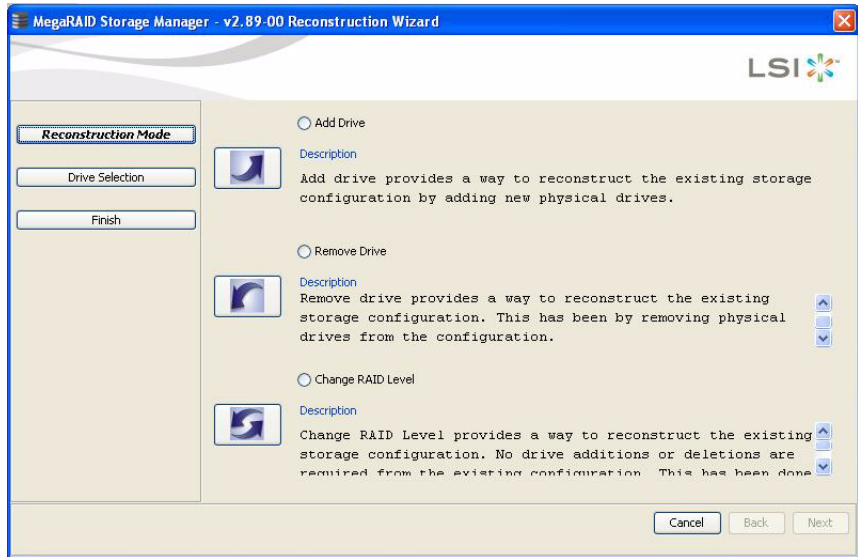
1. To start the Reconstruction Wizard, click on *Logical* view, and select a virtual drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. Select **Operations->Advanced Operations->Reconstruction Wizard** from the menu. Another option is to right-click on the virtual drive icon to access the Reconstruction Wizard.

A warning to back up your data appears.

3. Select **Confirm** at the warning and click **Yes**.

The Reconstruction Wizard menu appears, as shown in [Figure 7.10](#)

**Figure 7.10 Reconstruction Wizard**



This section has the following subsections explaining the Reconstruction Wizard options:

- [Section 7.6.1, “Adding a Drive to a Configuration”](#)
- [Section 7.6.2, “Removing a Drive from a Configuration”](#)
- [Section 7.6.3, “Changing the RAID Level of a Configuration.”](#)

## 7.6.1 Adding a Drive to a Configuration

**Caution:** Be sure to back up the data on the virtual drive before you add a drive to it.

Follow these steps to add a drive to a configuration with the Reconstruction Wizard:

1. Click **Add Drive** on the Reconstruction Wizard screen.
2. When the next screen appears, select an available drive in the top panel, and click the **Add** (down arrow) button to move it to the Selected Drive list.
3. Click **Next** to continue.

The next screen appears.

4. (Optional) Select a different RAID level for the configuration from the drop-down menu in the lower right of the window.
5. Review the configuration information.
6. Click **Finish** to accept and complete the configuration.

A warning states that this operation cannot be aborted and asks whether you want to continue.

**Note:** If you add a drive to a RAID 1 configuration, the RAID level automatically changes to RAID 5.

A reconstruction operation begins on the virtual drive. You can monitor the progress of the reconstruction in the Group Show Progress window. To do this, select **Group Operations->Show Progress**.

## 7.6.2 Removing a Drive from a Configuration

**Caution:** Be sure to back up the data on the virtual drive before you remove a drive from it.

Follow these steps to remove a drive from a RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 6 configuration with the Reconstruction Wizard:

1. Click **Remove Drive** on the Configuration Wizard screen.  
This option is not available for RAID 0 configurations.
2. When the next screen appears, select a drive in the top panel, and click the **Down Arrow** button to remove it from the configuration.
3. Click **Next** to continue.  
The next screen appears.
4. (Optional) Select a different RAID level from the drop-down menu in the lower right of the window.
5. Review the configuration information.
6. Click **Finish** to accept and complete the configuration.

A warning states that this operation cannot be aborted and asks whether you want to continue.

**Note:** If you remove a drive from a RAID 5 configuration, the RAID level automatically changes to RAID 0.

A reconstruction operation begins on the virtual drive. You can monitor the progress of the reconstruction in the Group Show Progress window. To do this, select **Group Operations->Show Progress**.

### 7.6.3 Changing the RAID Level of a Configuration

**Caution:** Be sure to back up the data on the virtual drive before you change its RAID level.

Follow these steps to change the RAID level of a RAID 1 or RAID 5 configuration with the Configuration Wizard:

1. Click **Change RAID Level** on the Configuration Wizard screen.  
This option is not available for RAID 0 configurations.
2. When the next screen appears, select a RAID level from the drop-down menu in the lower right corner.
3. Review the configuration information.
4. Click **Finish** to accept and complete the configuration.

A warning states that this operation cannot be aborted and asks whether you want to continue.

A reconstruction operation begins on the virtual drive. You can monitor the progress of the reconstruction in the Group Show Progress window. To do this, select **Group Operations->Show Progress**.

---

## 7.7 Deleting a Virtual Drive

**Caution:** Be sure to back up the data on the virtual drive before you delete it. Be sure that the operating system is not installed on this virtual drive.

You can delete virtual drives to rearrange the storage space. To delete a virtual drive, follow these steps:

1. Back up all user data on the virtual drive you intend to delete.
2. In the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, select the **Logical** tab, and click the icon of the virtual drive you want to delete.

3. In the right panel, select the **Operations** tab, and select **Delete Virtual Drive**.
4. When the warning messages appear, click **Yes** to confirm that you want to delete the virtual drive.

---

## 7.8 Saving a Storage Configuration to Drive

You can save an existing controller configuration to a file so you can apply it to another controller. To save a configuration file, follow these steps:

1. Select a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. On the menu bar, select **Operations->Configuration->Save Configuration to file**.

The Save dialog box appears.

3. In the Save dialog box, type a name for the configuration file, or accept the default name (`hostname.cfg`).
4. Click **Save** to save the configuration file.

---

## 7.9 Clearing a Storage Configuration from a Controller

You must clear a storage configuration from a controller before you can create a new configuration on the controller or load a previously saved configuration file.

**Caution:** Before you clear a configuration, be sure to save any data that you want to keep. Clearing a configuration deletes all data from the drives of the existing configuration. Be sure that the operating system is not installed on this configuration.

To clear a configuration from a controller, follow these steps:

1. Select a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.



2. On the menu bar, select **Operations->Configuration->Clear Configuration**.

A warning message appears that states that clearing the configuration will destroy the virtual drives and result in data loss on the selected controller.

3. Click **Yes** to clear the configuration or **No** to cancel the operation.

---

## 7.10 Adding a Saved Storage Configuration

When you replace a controller, or when you want to duplicate an existing storage configuration on a new controller, you can add a saved configuration to the controller.

**Caution:** When you add a saved configuration to a replacement controller, be sure that the number and capacity of the drives connected to the controller are exactly the same as when the configuration was saved.

To add a saved configuration, follow these steps:

1. Select a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. On the menu bar, select **Operations->Configuration->Add Configuration from file**.  
A warning message appears that states that this operation may cause an unstable condition because of differences in the two configurations.
3. Click **Yes**.
4. When the Open dialog box appears, select the configuration file, and click **Open**.
5. View the configuration detail, then select **Apply**.
6. Confirm the new configuration when prompted.



# Chapter 8

## Monitoring System Events and Storage Devices

---

The MegaRAID Storage Manager software enables you to monitor the status of drives, virtual drives, and other storage devices. This chapter explains how to use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to perform the following monitoring tasks:

- [Section 8.1, “Monitoring System Events”](#)
- [Section 8.2, “Configuring Alert Notifications”](#)
- [Section 8.3, “Monitoring Controllers”](#)
- [Section 8.4, “Monitoring Drives”](#)
- [Section 8.5, “Running a Patrol Read”](#)
- [Section 8.6, “Monitoring Virtual Drives”](#)
- [Section 8.7, “Monitoring Enclosures”](#)
- [Section 8.8, “Monitoring Battery Backup Units”](#)
- [Section 8.9, “Monitoring Rebuilds and Other Processes”](#)

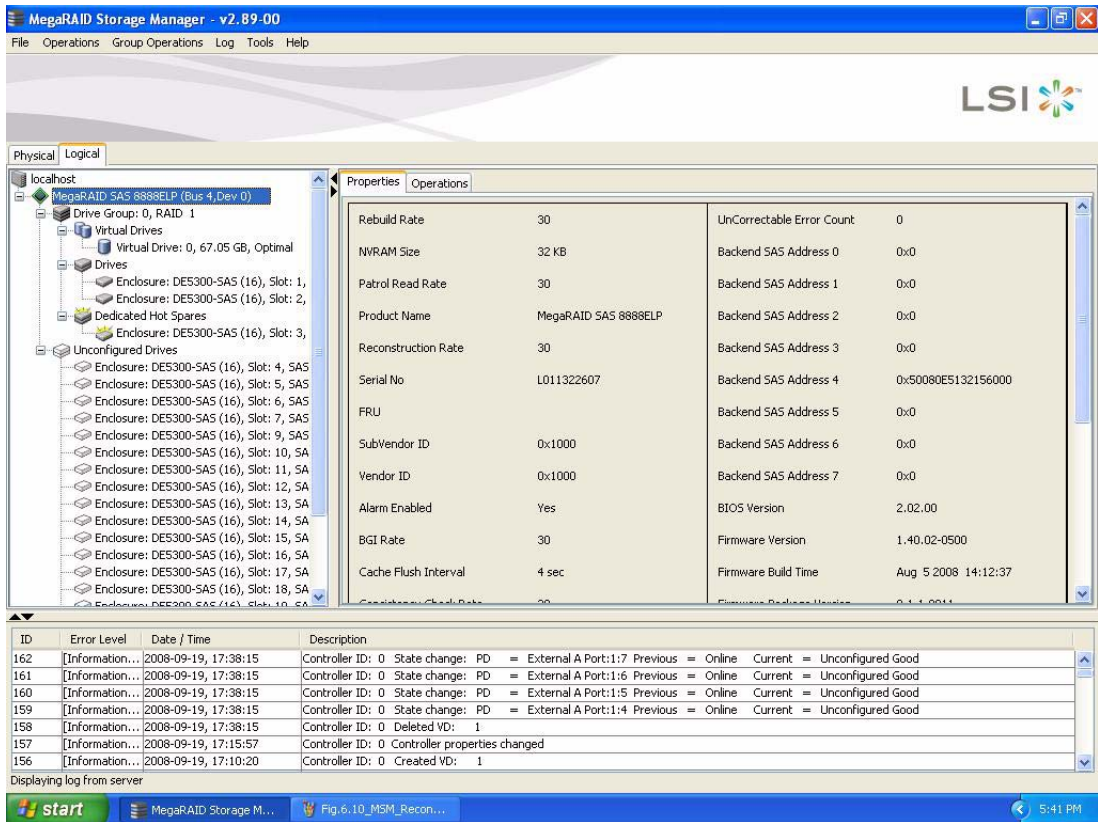
---

### 8.1 Monitoring System Events

MegaRAID Storage Manager software monitors the activity and performance of all controllers in the system and the storage devices connected to them. When an event occurs (such as the creation of a new virtual drive or the removal of a drive) an event message appears in the log displayed at the bottom of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, as shown in [Figure 8.1](#).

You can use MegaRAID Storage Manager to alert you about events. There are settings for the delivery of alerts, the severity level of events, exceptions, and email settings.

**Figure 8.1 Event Information Window**



Each message that appears in the event log has a severity level that indicates the importance of the event, as shown in [Table 8.1](#), a date and timestamp, and a brief description. You can click an event to display the same information in a window. (For a list of all events, see [Section Appendix A, “Events and Messages.”](#))

**Table 8.1 Event Severity Levels**

| Severity Level | Meaning                                                           |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Information    | Informational message. No user action is necessary.               |
| Warning        | Some component might be close to a failure point.                 |
| Critical       | A component has failed, but the system has not lost data.         |
| Fatal          | A component has failed, and data loss has occurred or will occur. |

The Log menu has four options:

- **Save Log:** Saves the current log to a .log file.
- **Save Log Text:** Saves the current log in .txt format.
- **View Saved Log:** Clears the current log information. You have the option of saving the log first.
- **Clear Log:** Enables you to load a local .log file.

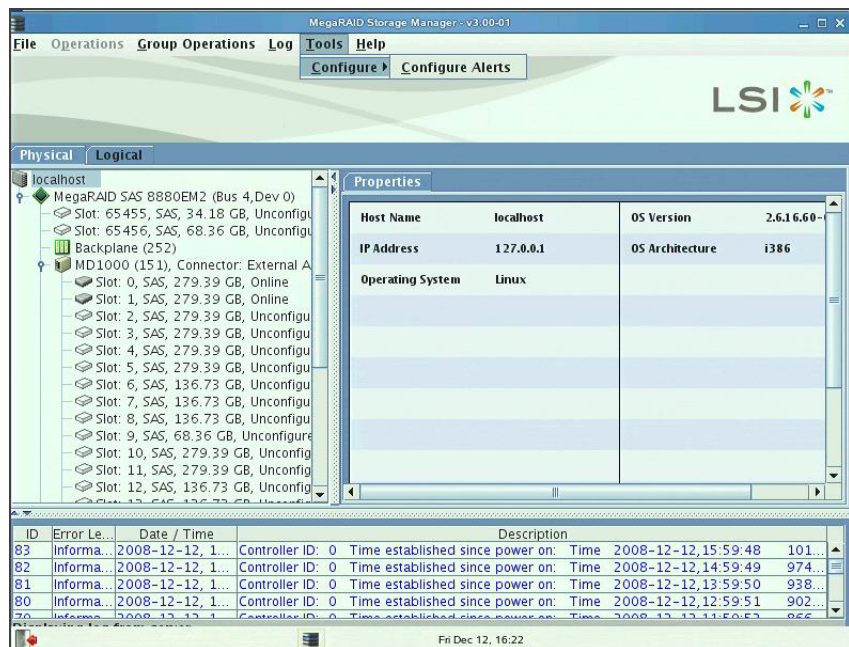
---

## 8.2 Configuring Alert Notifications

The Alert Notification Configuration feature allows you to control and configure the alerts that MegaRAID Storage Manager software sends when various system events occur.

To access this screen, select **Tools->Configure->Configure Alerts** on the main menu screen, as shown in [Figure 8.2](#).

**Figure 8.2 Alert Notification Configuration Menu**



The Alerts Notification Configuration screen appears, as shown in [Figure 8.3](#). The screen contains three tabs: **Alert Settings**, **Mail Server**, and **Email**. You can use each tab to perform tasks for that topic.

**Figure 8.3 Alerts Notification Configuration Screen**



You can select the **Alert Settings** tab to perform the following actions:

- Select the methods for the delivery of alerts.
- Change the severity level of events.
- Save an .xml backup file of the entire alert configuration.
- Load all of the values from a previously saved backup into the dialog to edit or send to the monitor.

**Note:** When you load a saved backup file, all unsaved changes made in the current session will be lost.

You can select the **Mail Server** tab to perform the following actions:

- Enter or edit the sender e-mail address.
- Enter the SMTP server.
- Require authentication of the email server.
- Save an .xml backup file of the entire alert configuration.

- Load all of the values from a previously saved backup into the dialog to edit or send to the monitor.

Note: When you load a saved backup file, all unsaved changes made in the current session will be lost.

You can select the **Email** tab to perform the following actions:

- Add new email addresses for recipients of alert notifications.
- Send test messages to the recipient email addresses.
- Remove email addresses of recipients of alert notifications.
- Save an .xml backup file of the entire alert configuration.
- Load all of the values from a previously saved backup into the dialog to edit or send to the monitor.

Note: When you load a saved backup file, all unsaved changes made in the current session will be lost.

## 8.2.1 Setting Alert Delivery Methods

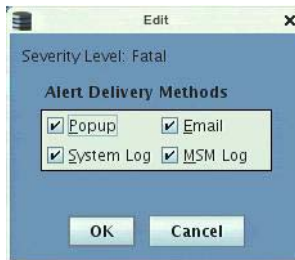
You can select the methods used to send alert deliveries, such as by popup, email, system log, or MSM log. You can select the alert delivery methods for each event severity level (Information, Warning, Critical and Fatal).

Perform the following steps to select the alert delivery methods:

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Alerts Setting** tab.
2. Under the **Alerts Delivery Methods** heading, select one of the severity levels.
3. Click **Edit**.

The Alert Notification Delivery Methods dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 8.4](#).

**Figure 8.4 Alert Notification Delivery Methods Dialog Box**



4. Select the desired alert delivery methods for alert notifications at the event severity level.
5. Click **OK** to set the delivery methods used for the severity level that you selected.

## 8.2.2 Changing Alert Delivery Methods for Individual Events

You can change the alert delivery options for an event without changing the severity level.

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Alerts Setting** tab.

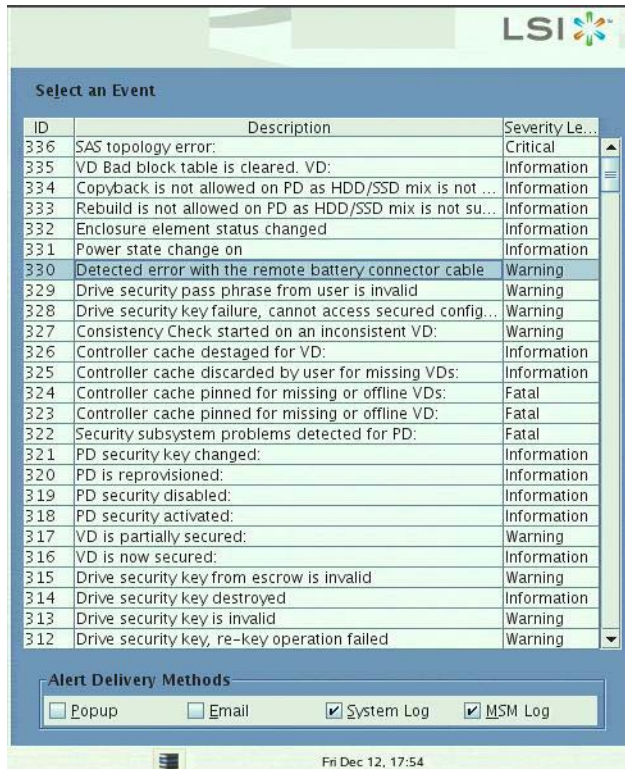
The the **Alerts Setting** portion of the screen appears, as shown in [Figure 8.3](#).

2. Click **Change Individual Events**.

The **Change Individual Events** dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 8.5](#). The dialog box shows the events by their ID number, description, and severity level.



**Figure 8.5 Change Individual Events Dialog Box**



3. Click an event in the list to select it.  
The current alert delivery methods appear for the selected event under the **Alert Delivery Methods** heading.
4. Select the desired alert delivery methods for the event.
5. Press ESC to return to the **Alerts Notification Configuration** screen.
6. Click **OK**.  
This saves all of the changes made to the event.

### 8.2.3 Changing the Severity Level for Individual Events

To change the event severity level for a specific event, perform the following steps:

**Note:** See [Table 8.1](#) for details about the severity levels.

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Alerts Setting** tab.

The **Alerts Setting** portion of the screen appears.

2. Click **Change Individual Events**.

The **Change Individual Events** dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 8.5](#). The dialog box shows the events by their ID number, description, and severity level.

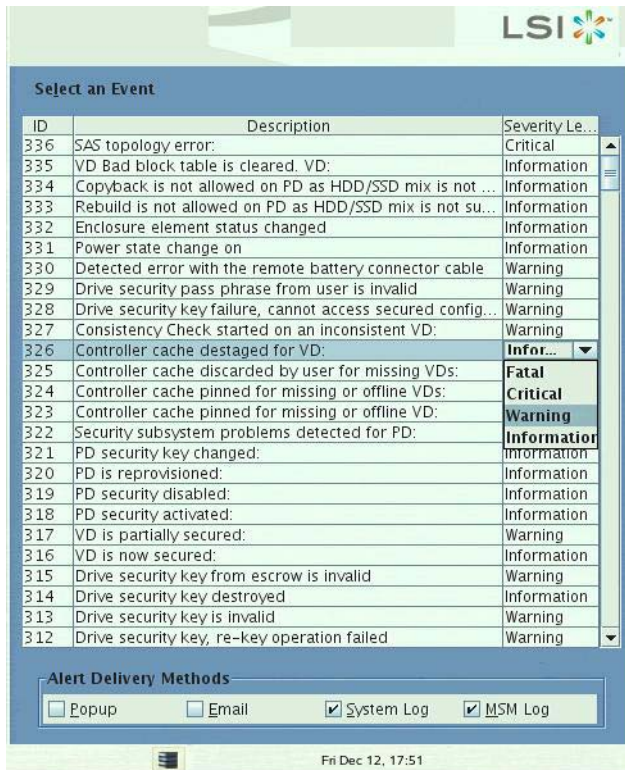
3. Click an event in the list to select it.

The current alert delivery methods appear for the selected event.

4. Click the **Severity** cell for the event.

The Event Severity drop-down menu appears for that event, as shown in [Figure 8.6](#).

**Figure 8.6 Change Individual Events Severity Level Menu**



5. Select a different severity level for the event from the menu.
6. Press ESC to return to the **Alerts Notification Configuration** screen.
7. Click **OK**.

This saves all of the changes made to the events.

## 8.2.4 Entering or Editing the Sender Email Address and SMTP Server

You can use the **Alerts Notification Configuration** screen to enter or edit the sender e-mail address and the SMTP server.

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Mail Server** tab.

The **Mail Server** options appear, as shown in [Figure 8.7](#).

**Figure 8.7 Mail Server Options**



The screenshot shows a window titled "Configure Alerts" with the LSI logo in the top right corner. The window has three tabs: "Alert Settings", "Mail Server", and "Email". The "Mail Server" tab is selected. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Sender email address:** A text input field containing "monitor@server.com".
- SMTP Server:** A text input field containing "127.0.0.1".
- This server requires authentication**
- User name:** An empty text input field.
- Password:** An empty text input field.

At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "Save Backup" and "Load Backup". Below the form are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Help".

2. Enter a new sender email address in the **Sender email address** field or edit the existing sender email address.
3. Click **OK**.

## 8.2.5 Authenticating a Server

You can use the Alerts Notification Configuration screen to authenticate the SMTP server, providing an extra level of security. The authentication check box enables the **User name** and **Password** fields when selected by default. Clearing the check box disables these fields.

Perform the following steps to enter or edit the address:

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Mail Server** tab.

The **Mail Server** options appears, as shown in [Figure 8.7](#). The authentication check box is selected by default.

2. Enter a user name in the **User name** field.
3. Enter the password in the **Password** field.
4. Click **OK**.

## 8.2.6 Saving Backup Configurations

You can save an `.xml` backup file of the entire alert configuration. This includes all the settings on the three tabs.

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Alert Setting** tab, **Mail Server** tab, or **Email** tab.

2. Click **Save Backup**.

The drive directory appears.

3. Enter a filename with an `.xml` extension for the backup configuration (in the format `filename.xml`).

4. Click **Save**.

The drive directory disappears.

5. Click **OK**.

The backup configuration is saved and the Alert Notification Configuration screen closes.

## 8.2.7 Loading Backup Configurations

You can load all of the values from a previously saved backup into the dialog (all tabs) to edit or send to the monitor.

**Note:** If you choose to load a backup configuration and the Configure Alerts dialog currently contains changes that have not yet been sent to the monitor, the changes will be lost. You are prompted to confirm your choice.

1. On the Alerts Notification Configuration screen, click the **Alert Setting** tab, **Mail Server** tab, or **Email** tab.

2. Click **Load Backup**.

You are prompted to confirm your choice. Then the drive directory appears from which you can select a backup configuration to load.

3. Select the backup configuration file (it should be in .xml format).
4. Click **Open**.

The drive directory disappears.

5. Click **OK**.

The backup configuration is saved and the Alerts Notification Configuration screen closes.

## 8.2.8 Adding Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications

The **Email** tab portion of the Alerts Notification Configuration screen shows the email addresses of recipients of the alert notifications. MegaRAID Storage Manager sends alert notifications to those email addresses. Use the screen to add or remove email addresses of recipients, and to send test messages to recipients that you add.

To add email addresses of recipients of the alert notifications, perform the following steps:

1. Click the **E-mail** tab on the Event Notification Configuration screen.

The **E-mail** section of the screen appears, as shown in [Figure 8.8](#).

**Figure 8.8 Email Settings**



2. Enter the email address you want to add in the **New recipient email address** field.
3. Click **Add**.  
The new email address appears in the **Recipient email addresses** field.

## 8.2.9 Testing Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications

Use the **Email** tab portion of the Alerts Notification Configuration screen to send test messages to the email addresses that you added for the recipients of alert notifications.

1. Click the **E-mail** tab on the Event Notification Configuration screen.  
The **E-mail** section of the screen appears, as shown in [Figure 8.8](#).
2. Click an email address in the **Recipient email addresses** field.
3. Click **Test**.
4. Confirm whether the test message was sent to the email address.

If MegaRAID Storage Manager cannot send an email message to the email address, an error message appears.


## 8.2.10 Removing Email Addresses of Recipients of Alert Notifications

Use the **Email** tab portion of the Alerts Notification Configuration screen to remove email addresses of the recipients of alert notifications.

1. Click the **E-mail** tab on the Event Notification Configuration screen.  
The **E-mail** section of the screen appears, as shown in [Figure 8.8](#).
2. Click an email address in the **Recipient email addresses** field.  
The **Remove** button, which was grayed out, is now active.
3. Click **Remove**.  
The email address is deleted from the list.

---

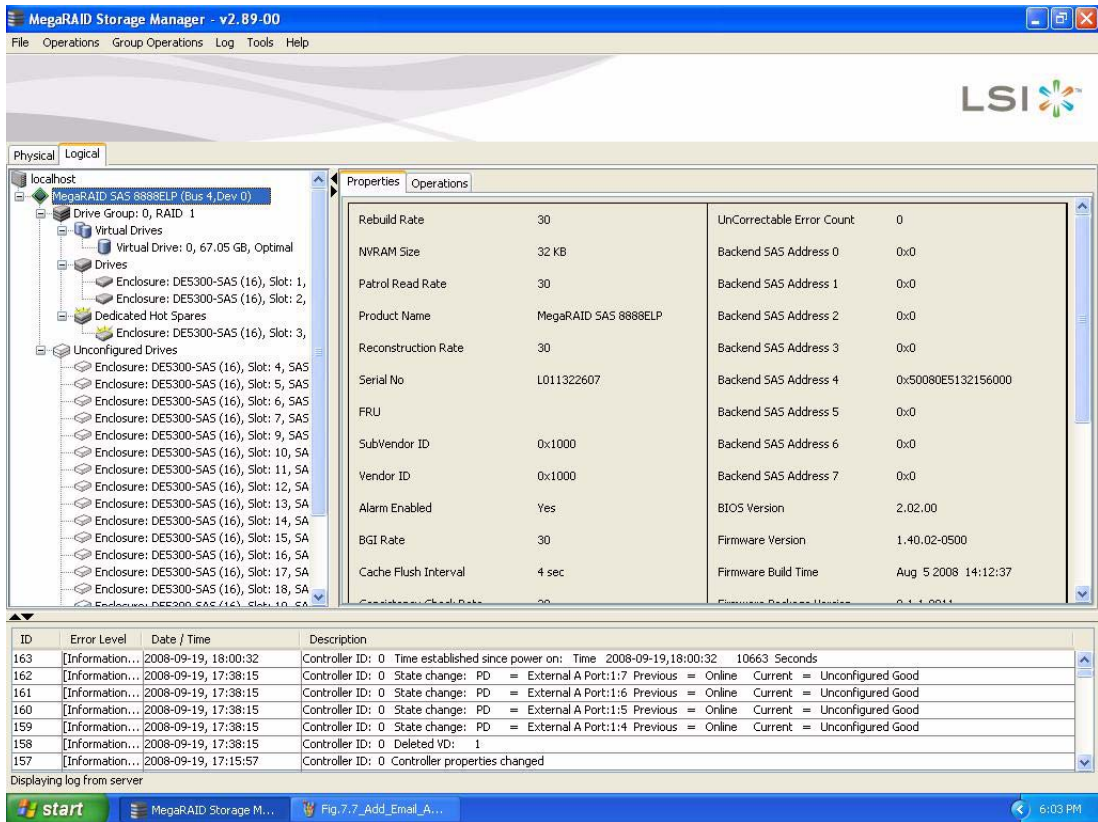
## 8.3 Monitoring Controllers

When MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, you can see the status of all controllers in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. If the controller is operating normally, the controller icon looks like this: . If the controller has failed, a small red circle appears to the right of the icon. (See [Section 6.2.1, “Physical/Logical View Panel”](#) for a complete list of device icons.)

To display complete controller information, click a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click the **Properties** tab in the right panel.

[Figure 8.9](#) shows the Controller Information window.

**Figure 8.9 Controller Information**





Most of the information on this screen is self-explanatory. Note:

- The *Rebuild Rate*, *Patrol Read Rate*, *Reconstruction Rate*, *Consistency Check Rate*, and *BGI Rate* (background initialization) are all user selectable. For more information, see [Section 7.3, “Changing Adjustable Task Rates,”](#) page 7-24.
- The *BBU Present* field indicates whether a battery backup unit is installed.
- The *Alarm Present* and *Alarm Enabled* fields indicate whether the controller has an alarm to alert the user with an audible tone when there is an error or problem on the controller. There are options on the controller Properties tab for silencing or disabling the alarm. All controller properties are defined in the [Section Appendix B, “Glossary.”](#)



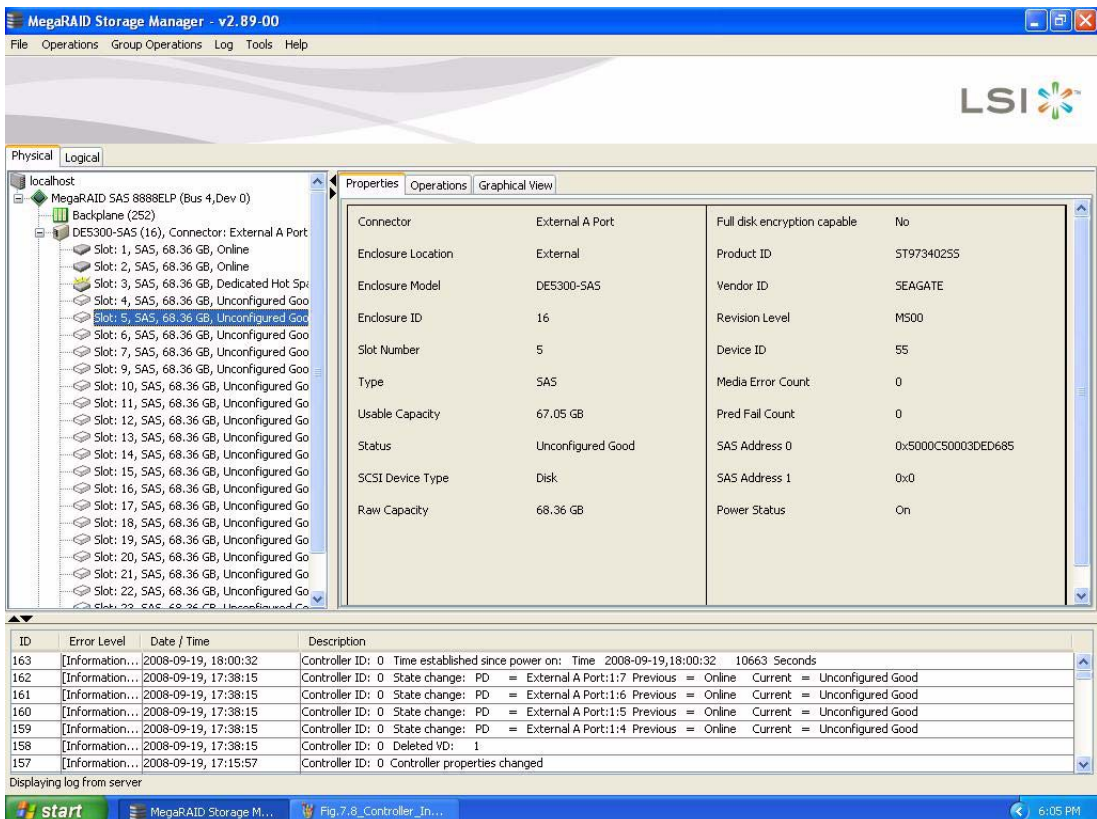
## 8.4 Monitoring Drives

When MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, you can see the status of all drives in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. If the drive is operating normally, its icon looks like this: . If the drive has failed, a small red circle appears to the right of the icon, like this: . (See [Section 6.2.1, “Physical/Logical View Panel”](#) for a complete list of device icons.)

To display complete drive information, click a drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click the **Properties** tab in the right panel.

Figure 8.10 shows the Properties panel for a drive.

Figure 8.10 Drive Information



The screenshot displays the MegaRAID Storage Manager interface. The left pane shows a tree view of the system components, including the MegaRAID controller and 22 SAS drives. Slot 5 is selected. The right pane shows the Properties tab for Slot 5, displaying various attributes and their values.

| Property           | Value             | Property                     | Value             |
|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| Connector          | External A Port   | Full disk encryption capable | No                |
| Enclosure Location | External          | Product ID                   | ST973402SS        |
| Enclosure Model    | DE5300-SAS        | Vendor ID                    | SEAGATE           |
| Enclosure ID       | 16                | Revision Level               | M500              |
| Slot Number        | 5                 | Device ID                    | 55                |
| Type               | SAS               | Media Error Count            | 0                 |
| Usable Capacity    | 67.05 GB          | Pred Fail Count              | 0                 |
| Status             | Unconfigured Good | SAS Address 0                | 0x5000C50003DE685 |
| SCSI Device Type   | Disk              | SAS Address 1                | 0x0               |
| Raw Capacity       | 68.36 GB          | Power Status                 | On                |

Below the Properties panel is a log table:

| ID  | Error Level      | Date / Time          | Description                                                                                           |
|-----|------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 163 | [Information...] | 2008-09-19, 18:00:32 | Controller ID: 0 Time established since power on: Time 2008-09-19,18:00:32 10663 Seconds              |
| 162 | [Information...] | 2008-09-19, 17:38:15 | Controller ID: 0 State change: PD = External A Port:1:7 Previous = Online Current = Unconfigured Good |
| 161 | [Information...] | 2008-09-19, 17:38:15 | Controller ID: 0 State change: PD = External A Port:1:6 Previous = Online Current = Unconfigured Good |
| 160 | [Information...] | 2008-09-19, 17:38:15 | Controller ID: 0 State change: PD = External A Port:1:5 Previous = Online Current = Unconfigured Good |
| 159 | [Information...] | 2008-09-19, 17:38:15 | Controller ID: 0 State change: PD = External A Port:1:4 Previous = Online Current = Unconfigured Good |
| 158 | [Information...] | 2008-09-19, 17:38:15 | Controller ID: 0 Deleted VD: 1                                                                        |
| 157 | [Information...] | 2008-09-19, 17:15:57 | Controller ID: 0 Controller properties changed                                                        |

The information on this panel is self-explanatory. There are no user-selectable properties for physical devices. Icons for other storage devices such as CD-ROM drives and DAT drives can also appear in the left panel.

The **Power Status** property shows **On** when a drive is spun up and **Powersave** when a drive is spun down. Note that SSD drives and other drives that never spin down still show **On**.

If the drives are in a drive enclosure, you can identify which drive is represented by a drive icon on the left. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Click the drive icon in the left panel.
2. Click the **Operations** tab in the right panel.
3. Select **Locate Physical Drive**, and click **Go**.

The LED on the drive in the enclosure starts blinking to show its location.

Note: LEDs on drives that are global hot spares do not blink.

4. To stop the drive light from blinking, select **Stop Locating Physical Drive**, and click **Go**.

All of the drive properties are defined in the Glossary.

To display a graphical view of a drive, click a drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click the **Graphical View** tab. In Graphical View, the drive's storage capacity is color coded according to the legend shown on the screen: configured space is blue, available space is white, and reserved space is red. When you select a virtual drive from the drop-down menu, the drive space used by that virtual drive is displayed in green.

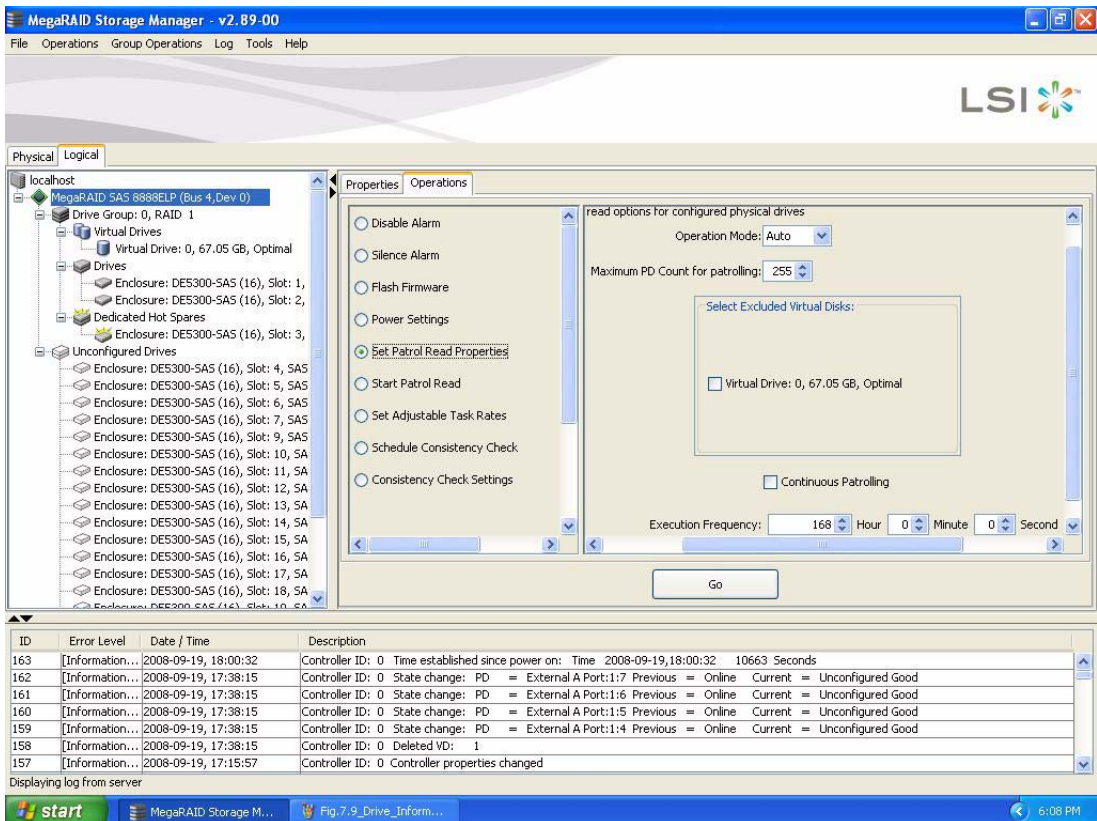
---

## 8.5 Running a Patrol Read

A patrol read periodically verifies all sectors of drives connected to a controller, including the system reserved area in the RAID configured drives. A patrol read can be used for all RAID levels and for all hot spare drives. A patrol read is initiated only when the controller is idle for a defined time period and has no other background activities. To start a patrol read, follow these steps:

1. Click a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. Select **Operations->Start Patrol Read**.  
To change the patrol read settings, follow these steps:
3. Click the **Logical** tab.
4. Click a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
5. Select the **Operations** tab in the right panel, and select **Set Patrol Read Properties**, as shown in [Figure 8.11](#).

**Figure 8.11 Patrol Read Configuration**



6. Select an Operation Mode for a patrol read. The options are:

- **Auto:** Patrol read runs automatically at the time interval you specify on this screen.
  - **Manual:** Patrol read runs only when you manually start it by selecting **Start Patrol Read** from the controller Options panel.
  - **Disabled:** Patrol read does not run.
7. (Optional) Specify a maximum count of drives to include in the patrol read. The count must be between 0 and 255.
  8. (Optional) Select virtual drives on this controller to **exclude** from the patrol read. The existing virtual drives are listed in the gray box. To exclude a virtual drive, check the box next to it.
  9. (Optional) Change the frequency at which the patrol read will run. The default frequency is 7 days (168 hours), which is suitable for most configurations. (You can select *second*, *minute*, or *hour* as the unit of measurement.)

Note: LSI recommends that you leave the patrol read frequency and other patrol read settings at the default values to achieve the best system performance. If you decide to change the values, record the original default value here so you can restore them later, if necessary:

**Patrol Read Frequency:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Continuous Patrolling:** Enabled/Disabled

**Patrol Read Task Rate:** \_\_\_\_\_

10. (Optional) Select **Continuous Patrolling** if you want patrol read to run continuously in the background instead of running at periodic intervals. If you select Continuous Patrolling, the time interval field is grayed out.
11. Click **Go** to enable these patrol read options.



Note: Patrol read does not report on its progress while it is running. The patrol read status is reported in the event log only.

You can also (optionally) change the patrol read *task rate*. The task rate determines the amount of system resources that are dedicated to a patrol read when it is running. LSI recommends, however, that you leave the patrol read task rate at its default setting. If you raise the task rate above the default, foreground tasks will run more slowly and it may seem that the system is not responding. If you lower the task rate below the

default, rebuilds and other background tasks might run very slowly and might not complete within a reasonable time. For more information, about the patrol read task rate, see [Section 7.3, “Changing Adjustable Task Rates.”](#)

---

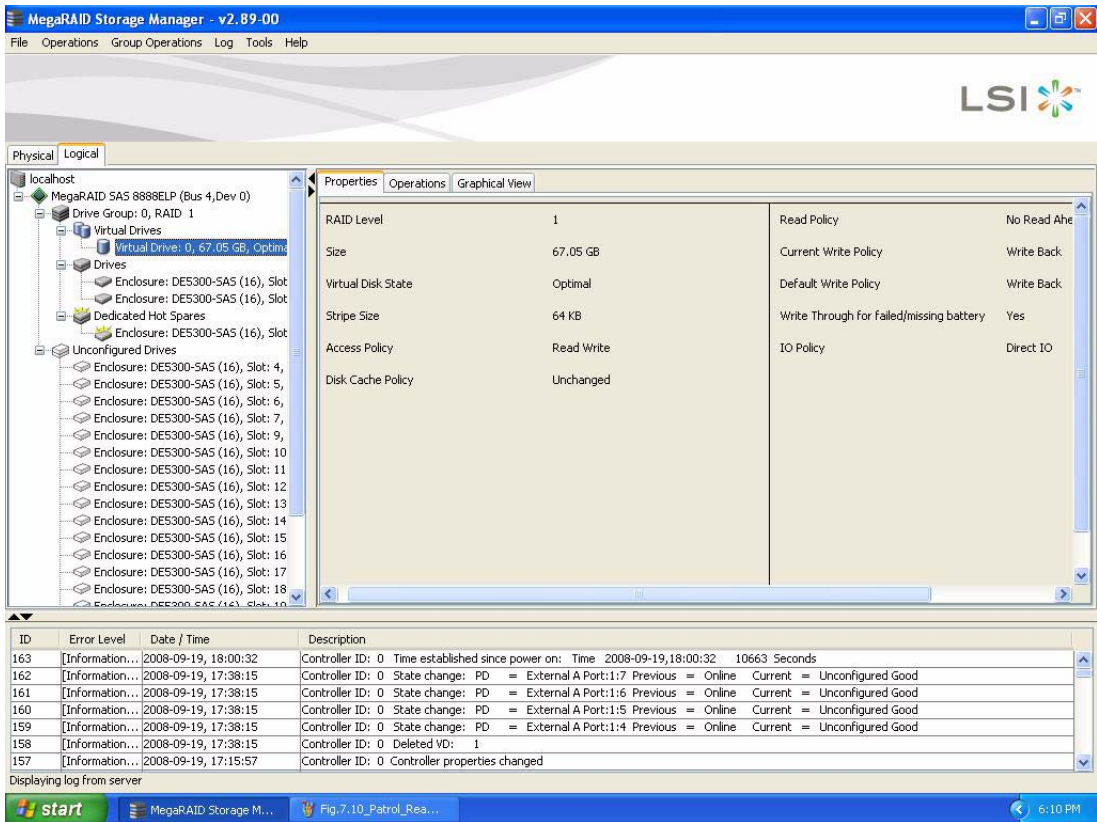
## 8.6 Monitoring Virtual Drives

When MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, you can see the status of all virtual drives. If a virtual drive is operating normally, the icon looks like this: . If the virtual drive is running in Degraded mode (for example, if a drive has failed), a small yellow circle appears to the right of the icon: . A red circle indicates that the Virtual Drive has failed and data has been lost.

When the Logical tab is selected, the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window shows which drives are used by each virtual drive. The same drive can be used by multiple virtual drives.

To display complete virtual drive information, click the **Logical** tab in the left panel, click a virtual drive icon in the left panel, and click the **Properties** tab in the right panel. All virtual drive properties are defined in the Glossary. [Figure 8.12](#) shows the Properties panel for a virtual drive.

Figure 8.12 Virtual Drive Properties



The RAID level, stripe size, and access policy of the virtual drive are set when it is configured.

**Note:** You can change the read policy, write policy, and other virtual drive properties by selecting **Operations->Set Virtual Drive Properties**.

If the drives in the virtual drive are in an enclosure, you can identify them by making their LEDs blink. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Click the virtual drive icon in the left panel.
2. Click the **Operations** tab in the right panel.
3. Select **Locate Virtual Drive** and click **Go**.


The LEDs on the drives in the virtual drive start blinking (except for hot spare drives).

4. To stop the LEDs from blinking, select **Stop Locating Virtual Drive**, and click **Go**.

To show a graphical view of a virtual drive, click a virtual drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click the **Graphical View** tab. In Graphical View, the drive group used for this virtual drive is shaded blue to show how much of the drive group capacity is used by this virtual drive. If part of the drive group is shaded white, this indicates that some of the capacity is used by another virtual drive. In a RAID 10, RAID 50, or RAID 60 configuration, two drive groups are used by one virtual drive.

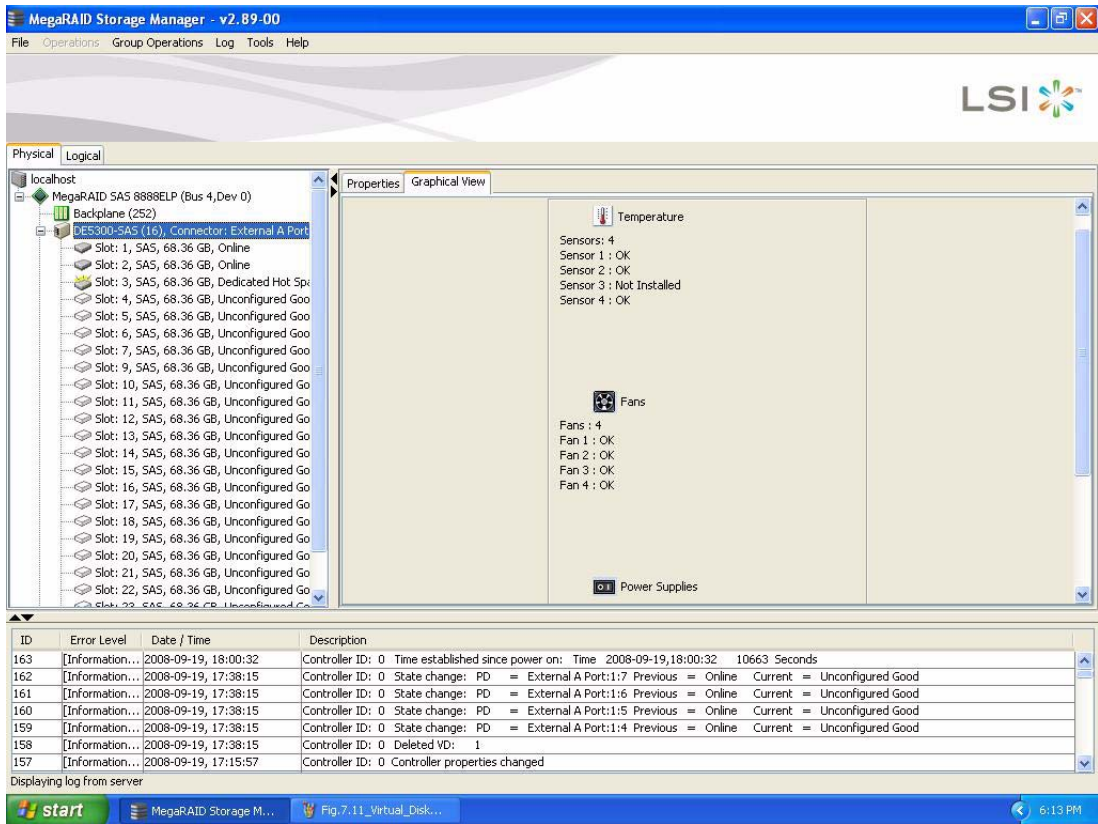
---

## 8.7 Monitoring Enclosures

When MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, you can see the status of all enclosures connected to the server by selecting the **Physical** tab in the left panel. If an enclosure is operating normally, the icon looks like this: . If the enclosure is not functioning normally—for example, if a fan has failed—a small yellow or red circle appears to the right of the icon.


Information about the enclosure appears in the right panel when you select the **Properties** tab. [Figure 8.13](#) shows the more complete enclosure information that is displayed when you select the **Graphical View** tab.

**Figure 8.13 Enclosure Information – Graphical View**



The display in the center of the screen shows how many slots of the enclosure are actually populated by drives, and the lights on the drives show the drive status. The information on the right shows you the status of the temperature sensors, fans, and power supplies in the enclosure.

## 8.8 Monitoring Battery Backup Units

When MegaRAID Storage Manager software is running, you can monitor the status of all of the BBUs connected to controllers in the server. If a BBU is operating normally, the icon looks like this: . If it has failed, a red dot appears next to the icon.

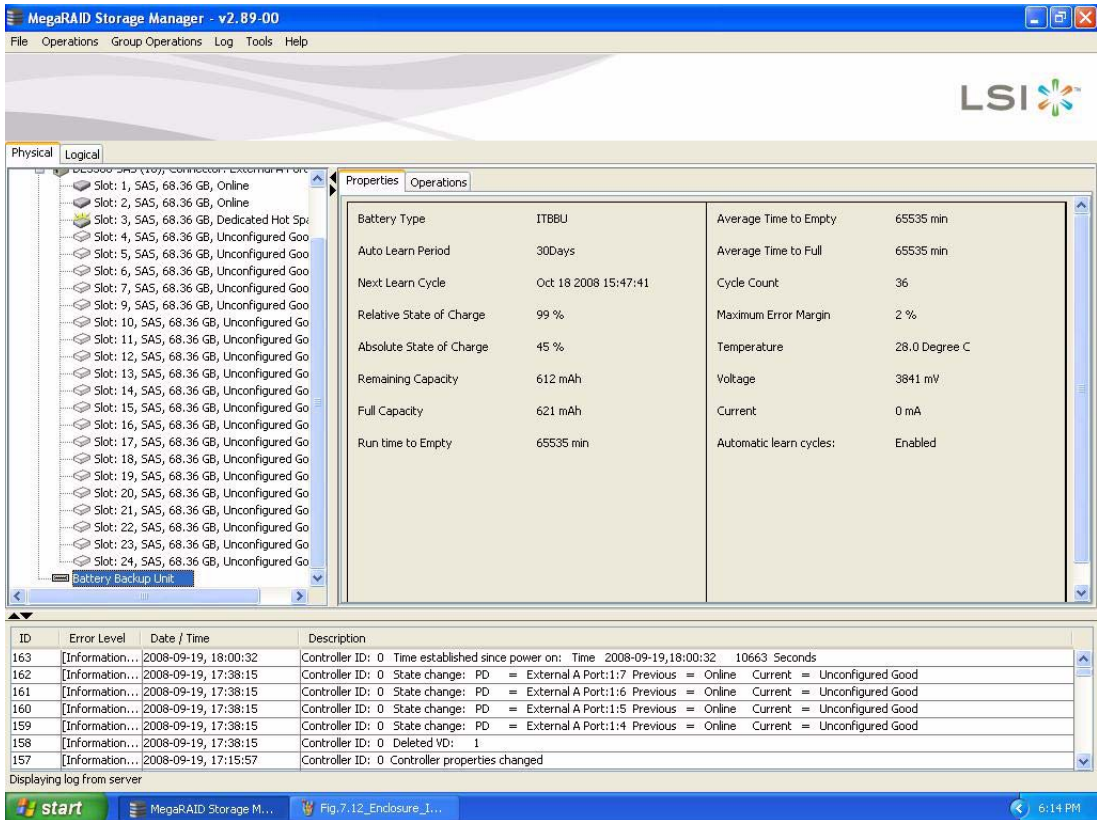
To show the properties for a BBU, perform the following steps:



1. Click the **Physical** tab on the main menu to open the physical view.
2. Select the BBU icon in the left panel.
3. Click the **Properties** tab.

The BBU properties, such as the battery type, temperature, and voltage, appear, as shown in [Figure 8.14](#).

**Figure 8.14 Battery Backup Unit Information**



The BBU properties include the following:

- The number of times the BBU has been recharged (Cycle Count)
- The full capacity of the BBU, plus the percentage of its current state of charge, and the estimated time until it will be depleted

- The current BBU temperature, voltage, current, and remaining capacity
- If the battery is charging, the estimated time until it is fully charged

## 8.8.1 Battery Learn Cycle

Learn Cycle is a battery calibration operation performed by the controller periodically to determine the condition of the battery. You can start battery learn cycles manually or automatically. To choose automatic battery learn cycles, enable automatic learn cycles. To choose manual battery learn cycles, disable automatic learn cycles.

If you enable automatic learn cycles, you can delay the start of the learn cycles for up to 168 hours (7 days). If you disable automatic learn cycles, you can start the learn cycles manually, and you can choose to receive a reminder to start a manual learn cycle.

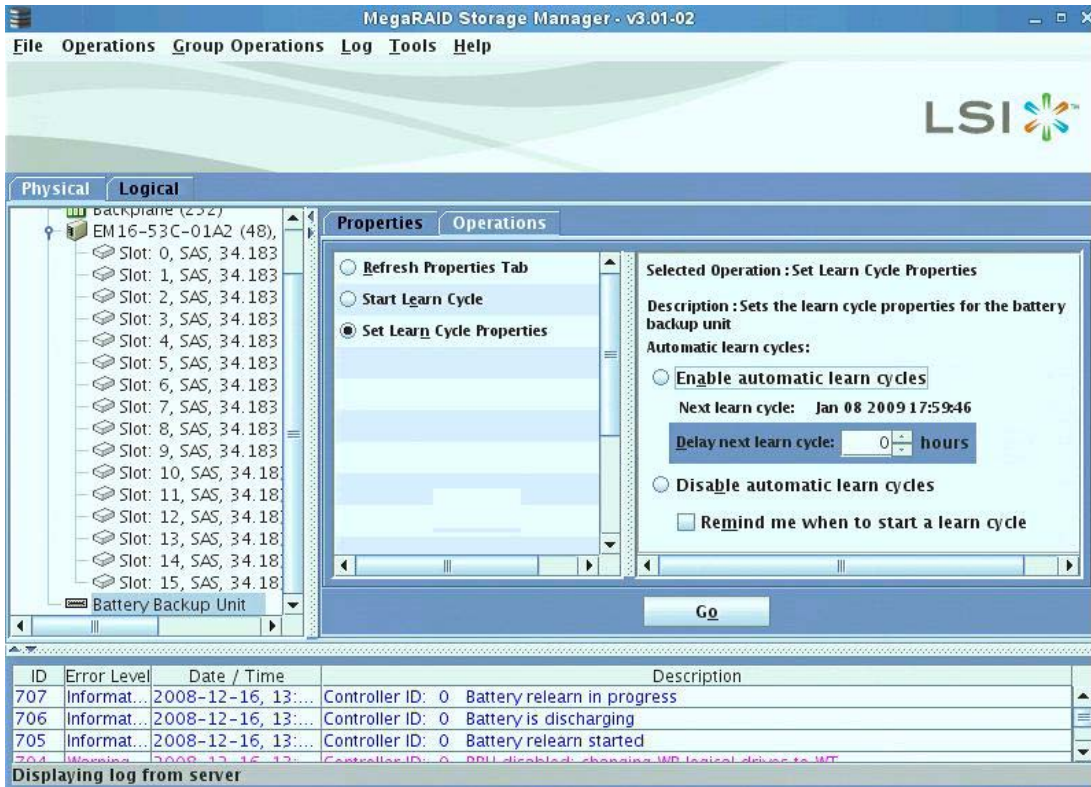
### 8.8.1.1 Setting Learn Cycle Properties

To set the learn cycle properties, perform the following steps:

1. Click the **Physical** tab to open the physical view.
2. Select the BBU icon in the left panel.
3. Click the **Operations** tab.

The BBU operations appear, as shown in [Figure 8.15](#).

**Figure 8.15 Battery Backup Unit Operations**



4. **Select Set Learn Cycle Properties.**

The options appear in the right frame.

5. To enable automatic learn cycles, click **Enable automatic learn cycles** and click **Go**.

You can delay the start of the next learn cycle by up to 7 days (168 hours) using the **Delay next learn cycle** field.

6. To disable automatic learn cycles, click **Disable automatic learn cycles** and click **Go**.

You can start the learn cycles manually. In addition, you can check the box next to the field **Remind me when to start a learn cycle** to receive a reminder to start a manual learn cycle.

### 8.8.1.2 Starting a Learn Cycle Manually

To start the learn cycle properties manually, perform the following steps:

1. Click the **Physical** tab to open the physical view.
2. Select the BBU icon in the left panel.
3. Click the **Operations** tab.

The BBU operations appear, as shown in [Figure 8.15](#).

4. Click **Start Learn Cycle** and click **Go**.

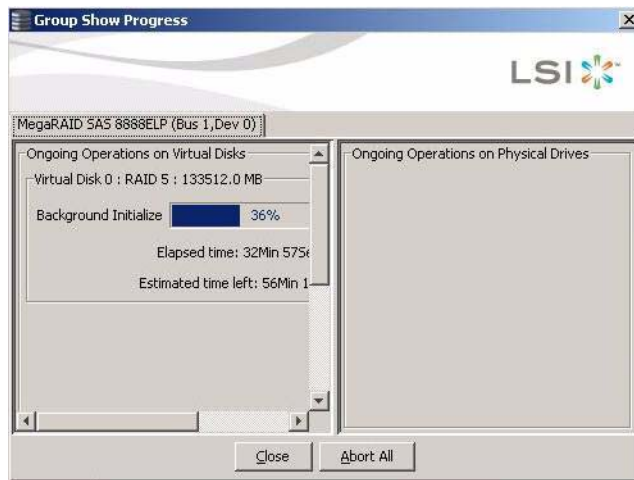
Another method to use the BBU operations is to right-click the BBU icon to open the operations menu and select **Start Learn Cycle**.

---

## 8.9 Monitoring Rebuilds and Other Processes

MegaRAID Storage Manager software allows you to monitor the progress of rebuilds and other lengthy processes in the Group Show Progress window. Open this window, shown in [Figure 8.16](#), by selecting **Group Operations->Show Progress** on the menu bar.

**Figure 8.16 Group Show Progress Window**



Operations on virtual drives appear in the left panel of the Group Show Progress window, and operations on drives appear in the right panel. The following operations appear in this window:

- Background or foreground initialization of a virtual drive
- Rebuild (see [Section 9.4, “Rebuilding a Drive”](#))
- Reconstruction (see [Section 7.6.1, “Adding a Drive to a Configuration”](#))
- Consistency check (see [Section 9.2, “Running a Consistency Check”](#))

A reconstruction process cannot be aborted. To abort any other ongoing process, click the **Abort** button next to the status indicator. Click **Abort All** to abort all ongoing processes. Click **Close** to close the window.



# Chapter 9

## Maintaining and Managing Storage Configurations

---

This section explains how to use MegaRAID Storage Manager software to maintain and manage storage configurations. This chapter explains how to perform the following tasks:

- [Section 9.1, “Initializing a Virtual Drive”](#)
  - [Section 9.2, “Running a Consistency Check”](#)
  - [Section 9.3, “Scanning for New Drives”](#)
  - [Section 9.4, “Rebuilding a Drive”](#)
  - [Section 9.5, “Making a Drive Offline or Missing”](#)
  - [Section 9.6, “Upgrading the Firmware”](#)
- 

### 9.1 Initializing a Virtual Drive

To initialize a virtual drive after completing the configuration process, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Logical** tab in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, and click the icon of the virtual drive that you want to initialize.
2. Select **Group Operations->Initialize**.  
The Group Initialize dialog box appears.
3. Select the virtual drive(s) to initialize.

**Caution:** Initialization erases all data on the virtual drive. Be sure to back up any data you want to keep before you initialize. Be sure the operating system is not installed on the virtual drive you are initializing.

4. Select the **Fast Initialization** check box if you want to use this option. If you leave the box unchecked, MegaRAID Storage Manager software will run a Full Initialization on the virtual drive. (For more information, see [Section 7.1.1, “Understanding Virtual Drive Parameters.”](#))
5. Click **Start** to begin the initialization.  
You can monitor the progress of the initialization. See [Section 8.9, “Monitoring Rebuilds and Other Processes”](#) for more information.

---

## 9.2 Running a Consistency Check

You should periodically run a consistency check on fault-tolerant virtual drives. It is especially important to do this if you suspect that the virtual drive consistency data may be corrupted. Be sure to back up the data before running a consistency check if you think the consistency data may be corrupted.

To run a consistency check, follow these steps:

1. Select **Group Operations->Check Consistency**.  
The Group Consistency Check window appears.
2. Select the virtual drives that you want to check, or click **Select All** to select all virtual drives.
3. Click **Start** to begin.

You can monitor the progress of the consistency check. See [Section 8.9, “Monitoring Rebuilds and Other Processes”](#) for more information.

**Note:** You can also run a consistency check by selecting the virtual drive icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window and selecting the option on the Operation tab in the right panel.



---

## 9.3 Scanning for New Drives



MegaRAID Storage Manager software normally detects newly installed drives and displays icons for them in the MegaRAID Storage Manager window. If for some reason MegaRAID Storage Manager software does not detect a new drive (or drives), you can use the Scan for Foreign Config command to find it. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Select a controller icon in the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.
2. Select **Operations->Scan for Foreign Configuration**.  
If MegaRAID Storage Manager software detects any new drives, it displays a list of them on the screen.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to complete the drive detection.

---

## 9.4 Rebuilding a Drive

If a single drive in a RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 10, or RAID 50 virtual drive fails, the system is protected from data loss. A RAID 6 virtual drive can survive two failed drives. A failed drive must be replaced, and the data on the drive must be rebuilt on a new drive to restore the system to fault tolerance. (You can choose to rebuild the data on the failed drive if the drive is still operational.) If hot spare drives are available, the failed drive is rebuilt automatically without any user intervention.

If a drive has failed, a red circle appears to the right of the drive icon: . A small yellow circle appears to the right of the icon of the virtual drive that uses this drive: . This indicates that the virtual drive is in a degraded state; the data is still safe, but data could be lost if another drive fails.

Follow these steps if you need to rebuild a drive:

1. Right-click the icon of the failed drive, and select **Rebuild**.
2. Click **Yes** when the warning message appears. If the drive is still good, a rebuild will start.

You can monitor the progress of the rebuild in the Group Show Progress window by selecting **Group Operations->Show Progress**. If the drive cannot be rebuilt, an error message appears. Continue with the next step.

3. Shut down the system, disconnect the power cord, and open the computer case.
4. Replace the failed drive with a new drive of equal capacity.
5. Close the computer case, reconnect the power cord, and restart the computer.
6. Restart the MegaRAID Storage Manager software.

When the new drive spins up, the drive icon changes back to normal status, and the rebuild process begins automatically. You can monitor the progress of the rebuild in the Group Show Progress window by selecting **Group Operations->Show Progress**.

---

## 9.5 Making a Drive Offline or Missing

If a drive is currently part of a redundant configuration and you want to use it in another configuration, you can use MegaRAID Storage Manager commands to remove the drive from the first configuration. When you do this, *all data on that drive is lost*.

To remove the drive from the configuration without harming the data on the virtual drive, follow these steps:

1. In the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, right-click the icon of a drive in a redundant virtual drive.
2. Select **Make drive offline** from the pop-up menu. The drive status changes to Offline.
3. Right-click the drive icon again, and select **Mark physical disk as missing**.
4. Select **File->Rescan**. The drive status changes to Unconfigured Good. At this point, the data on this drive is no longer valid.
5. If necessary, create a hot spare drive for the virtual drive from which you have removed the drive. (See [Section 7.2, "Adding Hot Spare Drives."](#))

When a hot spare is available, the data on the virtual drive will be rebuilt. You can now use the removed drive for another configuration.

**Caution:** If MegaRAID Storage Manager software detects that a drive in a virtual drive has failed, it makes the drive offline. If this happens, you must remove the drive and replace it. You cannot make the drive usable for another configuration by using the **Mark physical disk as missing** and **Rescan** commands.

---

## 9.6 Upgrading the Firmware

MegaRAID Storage Manager software enables you to easily upgrade the controller firmware. To do this, follow these steps:

1. In the left panel of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window, click the icon of the controller you need to upgrade.
2. In the right panel, click the **Operations** tab, and select **Flash Firmware**.
3. In the right panel, click **Browse** to locate for the .rom update file.
4. After you locate the file, click **OK**.

MegaRAID Storage Manager software displays the version of the existing firmware and the version of the new firmware file.

5. When you are prompted to indicate whether you want to upgrade the firmware, click **Yes**.

The controller is updated with the new firmware code contained in the .rom file.

6. Reboot the system after the new firmware is flashed.  
The new firmware does not take effect until reboot.



# Appendix A

## Events and Messages

---

This appendix lists the MegaRAID Storage Manager events that may appear in the event log.

MegaRAID Storage Manager software monitors the activity and performance of all controllers in the workstation and the devices attached to them. When an event occurs, such as the start of an initialization, an event message appears in the log at the bottom of the MegaRAID Storage Manager window.

Each message that appears in the event log has an error level that indicates the severity of the event, as shown in [Table A.1](#).

**Table A.1 Event Error Levels**

| Error Level | Meaning                                                           |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Information | Informational message. No user action is necessary.               |
| Warning     | Some component may be close to a failure point.                   |
| Critical    | A component has failed, but the system has not lost data.         |
| Fatal       | A component has failed, and data loss has occurred or will occur. |

[Table A.2](#) lists all of the MegaRAID Storage Manager event messages. The event message descriptions include placeholders for specific values that are determined when the event is generated. For example, in message No. 1 in the Event Messages table, “%s” is replaced by the firmware version, which is read from the firmware when the event is generated.

**Table A.2 Event Messages**

| Number          | Type        | Event Text                                                            |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x0000          | Information | MegaRAID firmware initialization started (PCI ID %04x/%04x/%04x/%04x) |
| 0x0001          | Information | MegaRAID firmware version %s                                          |
| 0x0002          | Fatal       | Unable to recover cache data from TBBU                                |
| 0x0003          | Information | Cache data recovered from TBBU successfully                           |
| 0x0004          | Information | Configuration cleared                                                 |
| 0x0005          | Warning     | Cluster down; communication with peer lost                            |
| 0x0006          | Information | Virtual drive %s ownership changed from %02x to %02x                  |
| 0x0007          | Information | Alarm disabled by user                                                |
| 0x0008          | Information | Alarm enabled by user                                                 |
| 0x0009          | Information | Background initialization rate changed to %d%%                        |
| 0x000a          | Fatal       | Controller cache discarded due to memory/battery problems             |
| 0x000b          | Fatal       | Unable to recover cache data due to configuration mismatch            |
| 0x000c          | Information | Cache data recovered successfully                                     |
| 0x000d          | Fatal       | Controller cache discarded due to firmware version incompatibility    |
| 0x000e          | Information | Consistency Check rate changed to %d%%                                |
| 0x000f          | Fatal       | Fatal firmware error: %s                                              |
| 0x0010          | Information | Factory defaults restored                                             |
| 0x0011          | Information | Flash downloaded image corrupt                                        |
| 0x0012          | Critical    | Flash erase error                                                     |
| 0x0013          | Critical    | Flash timeout during erase                                            |
| 0x0014          | Critical    | Flash error                                                           |
| 0x0015          | Information | Flashing image: %s                                                    |
| 0x0016          | Information | Flash of new firmware image(s) complete                               |
| 0x0017          | Critical    | Flash programming error                                               |
| 0x0018          | Critical    | Flash timeout during programming                                      |
| 0x0019          | Critical    | Flash chip type unknown                                               |
| 0x001a          | Critical    | Flash command set unknown                                             |
| 0x001b          | Critical    | Flash verify failure                                                  |
| (Sheet 1 of 13) |             |                                                                       |

**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| Number          | Type        | Event Text                                                                              |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x001c          | Information | Flush rate changed to %d seconds                                                        |
| 0x001d          | Information | Hibernate command received from host                                                    |
| 0x001e          | Information | Event log cleared                                                                       |
| 0x001f          | Information | Event log wrapped                                                                       |
| 0x0020          | Fatal       | Multi-bit ECC error: ECAR=%x, ELOG=%x, (%s)                                             |
| 0x0021          | Warning     | Single-bit ECC error: ECAR=%x, ELOG=%x, (%s)                                            |
| 0x0022          | Fatal       | Not enough controller memory                                                            |
| 0x0023          | Information | Patrol Read complete                                                                    |
| 0x0024          | Information | Patrol Read paused                                                                      |
| 0x0025          | Information | Patrol Read Rate changed to %d%%                                                        |
| 0x0026          | Information | Patrol Read resumed                                                                     |
| 0x0027          | Information | Patrol Read started                                                                     |
| 0x0028          | Information | Rebuild rate changed to %d%%                                                            |
| 0x0029          | Information | Reconstruction rate changed to %d%%                                                     |
| 0x002a          | Information | Shutdown command received from host                                                     |
| 0x002b          | Information | Test event: %s                                                                          |
| 0x002c          | Information | Time established as %s; (%d seconds since power on)                                     |
| 0x002d          | Information | User entered firmware debugger                                                          |
| 0x002e          | Warning     | Background Initialization aborted on %s                                                 |
| 0x002f          | Warning     | Background Initialization corrected medium error (%s at %lx)                            |
| 0x0030          | Information | Background Initialization completed on %s                                               |
| 0x0031          | Fatal       | Background Initialization completed with uncorrectable errors on %s                     |
| 0x0032          | Fatal       | Background Initialization detected uncorrectable double medium errors (%s at %lx on %s) |
| 0x0033          | Critical    | Background Initialization failed on %s                                                  |
| 0x0034          | Progress    | Background Initialization progress on %s is %s                                          |
| 0x0035          | Information | Background Initialization started on %s                                                 |
| 0x0036          | Information | Policy change on %s from %s to %s                                                       |
| 0x0038          | Warning     | Consistency Check aborted on %s                                                         |
| 0x0039          | Warning     | Consistency Check corrected medium error (%s at %lx)                                    |
| (Sheet 2 of 13) |             |                                                                                         |

**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| <b>Number</b>   | <b>Type</b> | <b>Event Text</b>                                                                 |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x003a          | Information | Consistency Check done on %s                                                      |
| 0x003b          | Information | Consistency Check done with corrections on %s                                     |
| 0x003c          | Fatal       | Consistency Check detected uncorrectable double medium errors (%s at %lx on %s)   |
| 0x003d          | Critical    | Consistency Check failed on %s                                                    |
| 0x003e          | Fatal       | Consistency Check completed with uncorrectable data on %s                         |
| 0x003f          | Warning     | Consistency Check found inconsistent parity on %s at strip %lx                    |
| 0x0040          | Warning     | Consistency Check inconsistency logging disabled on %s (too many inconsistencies) |
| 0x0041          | Progress    | Consistency Check progress on %s is %s                                            |
| 0x0042          | Information | Consistency Check started on %s                                                   |
| 0x0043          | Warning     | Initialization aborted on %s                                                      |
| 0x0044          | Critical    | Initialization failed on %s                                                       |
| 0x0045          | Progress    | Initialization progress on %s is %s                                               |
| 0x0046          | Information | Fast initialization started on %s                                                 |
| 0x0047          | Information | Full initialization started on %s                                                 |
| 0x0048          | Information | Initialization complete on %s                                                     |
| 0x0049          | Information | LD Properties updated to %s (from %s)                                             |
| 0x004a          | Information | Reconstruction complete on %s                                                     |
| 0x004b          | Fatal       | Reconstruction of %s stopped due to unrecoverable errors                          |
| 0x004c          | Fatal       | Reconstruct detected uncorrectable double medium errors (%s at %lx on %s at %lx)  |
| 0x004d          | Progress    | Reconstruction progress on %s is %s                                               |
| 0x004e          | Information | Reconstruction resumed on %s                                                      |
| 0x004f          | Fatal       | Reconstruction resume of %s failed due to configuration mismatch                  |
| 0x0050          | Information | Reconstructing started on %s                                                      |
| 0x0051          | Information | State change on %s from %s to %s                                                  |
| 0x0052          | Information | Drive Clear aborted on %s                                                         |
| 0x0053          | Critical    | Drive Clear failed on %s (Error %02x)                                             |
| (Sheet 3 of 13) |             |                                                                                   |



**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| <b>Number</b>   | <b>Type</b> | <b>Event Text</b>                                            |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x0054          | Progress    | Drive Clear progress on %s is %s                             |
| 0x0055          | Information | Drive Clear started on %s                                    |
| 0x0056          | Information | Drive Clear completed on %s                                  |
| 0x0057          | Warning     | Error on %s (Error %02x)                                     |
| 0x0058          | Information | Format complete on %s                                        |
| 0x0059          | Information | Format started on %s                                         |
| 0x005a          | Critical    | Hot Spare SMART polling failed on %s (Error %02x)            |
| 0x005b          | Information | Drive inserted: %s                                           |
| 0x005c          | Warning     | Drive %s is not supported                                    |
| 0x005d          | Warning     | Patrol Read corrected medium error on %s at %lx              |
| 0x005e          | Progress    | Patrol Read progress on %s is %s                             |
| 0x005f          | Fatal       | Patrol Read found an uncorrectable medium error on %s at %lx |
| 0x0060          | Critical    | Predictive failure: CDB: %s                                  |
| 0x0061          | Fatal       | Patrol Read puncturing bad block on %s at %lx                |
| 0x0062          | Information | Rebuild aborted by user on %s                                |
| 0x0063          | Information | Rebuild complete on %s                                       |
| 0x0064          | Information | Rebuild complete on %s                                       |
| 0x0065          | Critical    | Rebuild failed on %s due to source drive error               |
| 0x0066          | Critical    | Rebuild failed on %s due to target drive error               |
| 0x0067          | Progress    | Rebuild progress on %s is %s                                 |
| 0x0068          | Information | Rebuild resumed on %s                                        |
| 0x0069          | Information | Rebuild started on %s                                        |
| 0x006a          | Information | Rebuild automatically started on %s                          |
| 0x006b          | Critical    | Rebuild stopped on %s due to loss of cluster ownership       |
| 0x006c          | Fatal       | Reassign write operation failed on %s at %lx                 |
| 0x006d          | Fatal       | Unrecoverable medium error during rebuild on %s at %lx       |
| 0x006e          | Information | Corrected medium error during recovery on %s at %lx          |
| 0x006f          | Fatal       | Unrecoverable medium error during recovery on %s at %lx      |
| 0x0070          | Information | Drive removed: %s                                            |
| (Sheet 4 of 13) |             |                                                              |

**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| Number          | Type        | Event Text                                                               |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x0071          | Warning     | Unexpected sense: %s, CDB%s, Sense: %s                                   |
| 0x0072          | Information | State change on %s from %s to %s                                         |
| 0x0073          | Information | State change by user on %s from %s to %s                                 |
| 0x0074          | Warning     | Redundant path to %s broken                                              |
| 0x0075          | Information | Redundant path to %s restored                                            |
| 0x0076          | Information | Dedicated Hot Spare Drive %s no longer useful due to deleted drive group |
| 0x0077          | Critical    | SAS topology error: Loop detected                                        |
| 0x0078          | Critical    | SAS topology error: Unaddressable device                                 |
| 0x0079          | Critical    | SAS topology error: Multiple ports to the same SAS address               |
| 0x007a          | Critical    | SAS topology error: Expander error                                       |
| 0x007b          | Critical    | SAS topology error: SMP timeout                                          |
| 0x007c          | Critical    | SAS topology error: Out of route entries                                 |
| 0x007d          | Critical    | SAS topology error: Index not found                                      |
| 0x007e          | Critical    | SAS topology error: SMP function failed                                  |
| 0x007f          | Critical    | SAS topology error: SMP CRC error                                        |
| 0x0080          | Critical    | SAS topology error: Multiple subtractive                                 |
| 0x0081          | Critical    | SAS topology error: Table to table                                       |
| 0x0082          | Critical    | SAS topology error: Multiple paths                                       |
| 0x0083          | Fatal       | Unable to access device %s                                               |
| 0x0084          | Information | Dedicated Hot Spare created on %s (%s)                                   |
| 0x0085          | Information | Dedicated Hot Spare %s disabled                                          |
| 0x0086          | Critical    | Dedicated Hot Spare %s no longer useful for all drive groups             |
| 0x0087          | Information | Global Hot Spare created on %s (%s)                                      |
| 0x0088          | Information | Global Hot Spare %s disabled                                             |
| 0x0089          | Critical    | Global Hot Spare does not cover all drive groups                         |
| 0x008a          | Information | Created %s}                                                              |
| 0x008b          | Information | Deleted %s}                                                              |
| 0x008c          | Information | Marking LD %s inconsistent due to active writes at shutdown              |
| (Sheet 5 of 13) |             |                                                                          |

**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| <b>Number</b>   | <b>Type</b> | <b>Event Text</b>                                  |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 0x008d          | Information | Battery Present                                    |
| 0x008e          | Warning     | Battery Not Present                                |
| 0x008f          | Information | New Battery Detected                               |
| 0x0090          | Information | Battery has been replaced                          |
| 0x0091          | Critical    | Battery temperature is high                        |
| 0x0092          | Warning     | Battery voltage low                                |
| 0x0093          | Information | Battery started charging                           |
| 0x0094          | Information | Battery is discharging                             |
| 0x0095          | Information | Battery temperature is normal                      |
| 0x0096          | Fatal       | Battery needs to be replacement, SOH Bad           |
| 0x0097          | Information | Battery relearn started                            |
| 0x0098          | Information | Battery relearn in progress                        |
| 0x0099          | Information | Battery relearn completed                          |
| 0x009a          | Critical    | Battery relearn timed out                          |
| 0x009b          | Information | Battery relearn pending: Battery is under charge   |
| 0x009c          | Information | Battery relearn postponed                          |
| 0x009d          | Information | Battery relearn will start in 4 days               |
| 0x009e          | Information | Battery relearn will start in 2 day                |
| 0x009f          | Information | Battery relearn will start in 1 day                |
| 0x00a0          | Information | Battery relearn will start in 5 hours              |
| 0x00a1          | Information | Battery removed                                    |
| 0x00a2          | Information | Current capacity of the battery is below threshold |
| 0x00a3          | Information | Current capacity of the battery is above threshold |
| 0x00a4          | Information | Enclosure (SES) discovered on %s                   |
| 0x00a5          | Information | Enclosure (SAFTE) discovered on %s                 |
| 0x00a6          | Critical    | Enclosure %s communication lost                    |
| 0x00a7          | Information | Enclosure %s communication restored                |
| 0x00a8          | Critical    | Enclosure %s fan %d failed                         |
| 0x00a9          | Information | Enclosure %s fan %d inserted                       |
| 0x00aa          | Critical    | Enclosure %s fan %d removed                        |
| 0x00ab          | Critical    | Enclosure %s power supply %d failed                |
| (Sheet 6 of 13) |             |                                                    |

**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| Number          | Type        | Event Text                                                        |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x00ac          | Information | Enclosure %s power supply %d inserted                             |
| 0x00ad          | Critical    | Enclosure %s power supply %d removed                              |
| 0x00ae          | Critical    | Enclosure %s SIM %d failed                                        |
| 0x00af          | Information | Enclosure %s SIM %d inserted                                      |
| 0x00b0          | Critical    | Enclosure %s SIM %d removed                                       |
| 0x00b1          | Warning     | Enclosure %s temperature sensor %d below warning threshold        |
| 0x00b2          | Critical    | Enclosure %s temperature sensor %d below error threshold          |
| 0x00b3          | Warning     | Enclosure %s temperature sensor %d above warning threshold        |
| 0x00b4          | Critical    | Enclosure %s temperature sensor %d above error threshold          |
| 0x00b5          | Critical    | Enclosure %s shutdown                                             |
| 0x00b6          | Warning     | Enclosure %s not supported; too many enclosures connected to port |
| 0x00b7          | Critical    | Enclosure %s firmware mismatch                                    |
| 0x00b8          | Warning     | Enclosure %s sensor %d bad                                        |
| 0x00b9          | Critical    | Enclosure %s phy %d bad                                           |
| 0x00ba          | Critical    | Enclosure %s is unstable                                          |
| 0x00bb          | Critical    | Enclosure %s hardware error                                       |
| 0x00bc          | Critical    | Enclosure %s not responding                                       |
| 0x00bd          | Information | SAS/SATA mixing not supported in enclosure; Drive %s disabled     |
| 0x00be          | Information | Enclosure (SES) hotplug on %s was detected, but is not supported  |
| 0x00bf          | Information | Clustering enabled                                                |
| 0x00c0          | Information | Clustering disabled                                               |
| 0x00c1          | Information | Drive too small to be used for auto-rebuild on %s                 |
| 0x00c2          | Information | BBU enabled; changing WT virtual drives to WB                     |
| 0x00c3          | Warning     | BBU disabled; changing WB virtual drives to WT                    |
| 0x00c4          | Warning     | Bad block table on drive %s is 80% full                           |
| 0x00c5          | Fatal       | Bad block table on drive %s is full; unable to log block %lx      |
| (Sheet 7 of 13) |             |                                                                   |

**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| Number          | Type        | Event Text                                                                  |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x00c6          | Information | Consistency Check Aborted due to ownership loss on %s                       |
| 0x00c7          | Information | Background Initialization (BGI) Aborted Due to Ownership Loss on %s         |
| 0x00c8          | Critical    | Battery/charger problems detected; SOH Bad                                  |
| 0x00c9          | Warning     | Single-bit ECC error: ECAR=%x, ELOG=%x, (%s); warning threshold exceeded    |
| 0x00ca          | Critical    | Single-bit ECC error: ECAR=%x, ELOG=%x, (%s); critical threshold exceeded   |
| 0x00cb          | Critical    | Single-bit ECC error: ECAR=%x, ELOG=%x, (%s); further reporting disabled    |
| 0x00cc          | Critical    | Enclosure %s Power supply %d switched off                                   |
| 0x00cd          | Information | Enclosure %s Power supply %d switched on                                    |
| 0x00ce          | Critical    | Enclosure %s Power supply %d cable removed                                  |
| 0x00cf          | Information | Enclosure %s Power supply %d cable inserted                                 |
| 0x00d0          | Information | Enclosure %s Fan %d returned to normal                                      |
| 0x00d1          | Information | BBU Retention test was initiated on previous boot                           |
| 0x00d2          | Information | BBU Retention test passed                                                   |
| 0x00d3          | Critical    | BBU Retention test failed!                                                  |
| 0x00d4          | Information | NVRAM Retention test was initiated on previous boot                         |
| 0x00d5          | Information | NVRAM Retention test passed                                                 |
| 0x00d6          | Critical    | NVRAM Retention test failed!                                                |
| 0x00d7          | Information | %s test completed %d passes successfully                                    |
| 0x00d8          | Critical    | %s test FAILED on %d pass. Fail data: errorOffset=%x goodData=%x badData=%x |
| 0x00d9          | Information | Self check diagnostics completed                                            |
| 0x00da          | Information | Foreign Configuration Detected                                              |
| 0x00db          | Information | Foreign Configuration Imported                                              |
| 0x00dc          | Information | Foreign Configuration Cleared                                               |
| 0x00dd          | Warning     | NVRAM is corrupt; reinitializing                                            |
| 0x00de          | Warning     | NVRAM mismatch occurred                                                     |
| 0x00df          | Warning     | SAS wide port %d lost link on PHY %d                                        |
| 0x00e0          | Information | SAS wide port %d restored link on PHY %d                                    |
| (Sheet 8 of 13) |             |                                                                             |

**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| Number          | Type        | Event Text                                                                                                               |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x00e1          | Warning     | SAS port %d, PHY %d has exceeded the allowed error rate                                                                  |
| 0x00e2          | Warning     | Bad block reassigned on %s at %lx to %lx                                                                                 |
| 0x00e3          | Information | Controller Hot Plug detected                                                                                             |
| 0x00e4          | Warning     | Enclosure %s temperature sensor %d differential detected                                                                 |
| 0x00e5          | Information | Drive test cannot start. No qualifying drives found                                                                      |
| 0x00e6          | Information | Time duration provided by host is not sufficient for self check                                                          |
| 0x00e7          | Information | Marked Missing for %s on drive group %d row %d                                                                           |
| 0x00e8          | Information | Replaced Missing as %s on drive group %d row %d                                                                          |
| 0x00e9          | Information | Enclosure %s Temperature %d returned to normal                                                                           |
| 0x00ea          | Information | Enclosure %s Firmware download in progress                                                                               |
| 0x00eb          | Warning     | Enclosure %s Firmware download failed                                                                                    |
| 0x00ec          | Warning     | %s is not a certified drive                                                                                              |
| 0x00ed          | Information | Dirty cache data discarded by user                                                                                       |
| 0x00ee          | Information | Drives missing from configuration at boot                                                                                |
| 0x00ef          | Information | Virtual drives (VDs) missing drives and will go offline at boot: %s                                                      |
| 0x00f0          | Information | VDs missing at boot: %s                                                                                                  |
| 0x00f1          | Information | Previous configuration completely missing at boot                                                                        |
| 0x00f2          | Information | Battery charge complete                                                                                                  |
| 0x00f3          | Information | Enclosure %s fan %d speed changed                                                                                        |
| 0x00f4          | Information | Dedicated spare %s imported as global due to missing arrays                                                              |
| 0x00f5          | Information | %s rebuild not possible as SAS/SATA is not supported in an array                                                         |
| 0x00f6          | Information | SEP %s has been rebooted as a part of enclosure firmware download. SEP will be unavailable until this process completes. |
| 0x00f7          | Information | Inserted PD: %s Info: %s                                                                                                 |
| 0x00f8          | Information | Removed PD: %s Info: %s                                                                                                  |
| 0x00f9          | Information | VD %s is now OPTIMAL                                                                                                     |
| 0x00fa          | Warning     | VD %s is now PARTIALLY DEGRADED                                                                                          |
| (Sheet 9 of 13) |             |                                                                                                                          |

**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| Number           | Type        | Event Text                                                               |
|------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x00fb           | Critical    | VD %s is now DEGRADED                                                    |
| 0x00fc           | Fatal       | VD %s is now OFFLINE                                                     |
| 0x00fd           | Warning     | Battery requires reconditioning; please initiate a LEARN cycle           |
| 0x00fe           | Warning     | VD %s disabled because RAID-5 is not supported by this RAID key          |
| 0x00ff           | Warning     | VD %s disabled because RAID-6 is not supported by this controller        |
| 0x0100           | Warning     | VD %s disabled because SAS drives are not supported by this RAID key     |
| 0x0101           | Warning     | PD missing: %s                                                           |
| 0x0102           | Warning     | Puncturing of LBAs enabled                                               |
| 0x0103           | Warning     | Puncturing of LBAs disabled                                              |
| 0x0104           | Critical    | Enclosure %s EMM %d not installed                                        |
| 0x0105           | Information | Package version %s                                                       |
| 0x0106           | Warning     | Global affinity Hot Spare %s commissioned in a different enclosure       |
| 0x0107           | Warning     | Foreign configuration table overflow                                     |
| 0x0108           | Warning     | Partial foreign configuration imported, PDs not imported:%s              |
| 0x0109           | Information | Connector %s is active                                                   |
| 0x010a           | Information | Board Revision %s                                                        |
| 0x010b           | Warning     | Command timeout on PD %s, CDB:%s                                         |
| 0x010c           | Warning     | PD %s reset (Type %02x)                                                  |
| 0x010d           | Warning     | VD bad block table on %s is 80% full                                     |
| 0x010e           | Fatal       | VD bad block table on %s is full; unable to log block %lx (on %s at %lx) |
| 0x010f           | Fatal       | Uncorrectable medium error logged for %s at %lx (on %s at %lx)           |
| 0x0110           | Information | VD medium error corrected on %s at %lx                                   |
| 0x0111           | Warning     | Bad block table on PD %s is 100% full                                    |
| 0x0112           | Warning     | VD bad block table on PD %s is 100% full                                 |
| 0x0113           | Fatal       | Controller needs replacement, IOP is faulty                              |
| 0x0114           | Information | CopyBack started on PD %s from PD %s                                     |
| (Sheet 10 of 13) |             |                                                                          |

**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| Number           | Type        | Event Text                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x0115           | Information | CopyBack aborted on PD %s and src is PD %s                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 0x0116           | Information | CopyBack complete on PD %s from PD %s                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 0x0117           | Progress    | CopyBack progress on PD %s is %s                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 0x0118           | Information | CopyBack resumed on PD %s from %s                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 0x0119           | Information | CopyBack automatically started on PD %s from %s                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 0x011a           | Critical    | CopyBack failed on PD %s due to source %s error                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 0x011b           | Warning     | Early Power off warning was unsuccessful                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 0x011c           | Information | BBU FRU is %s                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 0x011d           | Information | %s FRU is %s                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 0x011e           | Information | Controller hardware revision ID %s                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 0x011f           | Warning     | Foreign import shall result in a backward incompatible upgrade of configuration metadata                                                                                                                               |
| 0x0120           | Information | Redundant path restored for PD %s                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 0x0121           | Warning     | Redundant path broken for PD %s                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 0x0122           | Information | Redundant enclosure EMM %s inserted for EMM %s                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 0x0123           | Information | Redundant enclosure EMM %s removed for EMM %s                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 0x0124           | Warning     | Patrol Read can't be started, as PDs are either not ONLINE, or are in a VD with an active process, or are in an excluded VD                                                                                            |
| 0x0125           | Information | Copyback aborted by user on PD %s and src is PD %s                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 0x0126           | Critical    | Copyback aborted on hot spare %s from %s, as hot spare needed for rebuild                                                                                                                                              |
| 0x0127           | Warning     | Copyback aborted on PD %s from PD %s, as rebuild required in the array                                                                                                                                                 |
| 0x0128           | Fatal       | Controller cache discarded for missing or offline VD %s<br>When a VD with cached data goes offline or missing during runtime, the cache for the VD is discarded. Because the VD is offline, the cache cannot be saved. |
| 0x0129           | Information | Copyback cannot be started as PD %s is too small for src PD %s                                                                                                                                                         |
| 0x012a           | Information | Copyback cannot be started on PD %s from PD %s, as SAS/SATA is not supported in an array                                                                                                                               |
| 0x012b           | Information | Microcode update started on PD %s                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 0x012c           | Information | Microcode update completed on PD %s                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| (Sheet 11 of 13) |             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |



**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| <b>Number</b>    | <b>Type</b> | <b>Event Text</b>                                                                                         |
|------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x012d           | Warning     | Microcode update timeout on PD %s                                                                         |
| 0x012e           | Warning     | Microcode update failed on PD %s                                                                          |
| 0x012f           | Warning     | Microcode update failed on PD %s                                                                          |
| 0x0130           | Information | Controller properties changed                                                                             |
| 0x0131           | Information | Patrol Read properties changed                                                                            |
| 0x0132           | Information | CC Schedule properties changed                                                                            |
| 0x0133           | Information | Battery properties changed                                                                                |
| 0x0134           | Warning     | Periodic Battery Relearn is pending. Please initiate manual learn cycle as Automatic learn is not enabled |
| 0x0135           | Information | Drive security key created                                                                                |
| 0x0136           | Information | Drive security key backed up                                                                              |
| 0x0138           | Information | Drive security key from escrow, verified                                                                  |
| 0x0139           | Information | Drive security key changed                                                                                |
| 0x013a           | Warning     | Drive security key, re-key operation failed                                                               |
| 0x013b           | Warning     | Drive security key is invalid                                                                             |
| 0x013c           | Information | Drive security key destroyed                                                                              |
| 0x013d           | Warning     | Drive security key from escrow is invalid                                                                 |
| 0x013e           | Information | VD %s is now secured                                                                                      |
| 0x013f           | Warning     | VD %s is partially secured                                                                                |
| 0x0140           | Information | PD %s security activated                                                                                  |
| 0x0141           | Information | PD %s security disabled                                                                                   |
| 0x0142           | Information | PD %s is reprovisioned                                                                                    |
| 0x0143           | Information | PD %s security key changed                                                                                |
| 0x0144           | Fatal       | Security subsystem problems detected for PD %s                                                            |
| 0x0145           | Fatal       | Controller cache pinned for missing or offline VD %s                                                      |
| 0x0146           | Fatal       | Controller cache pinned for missing or offline VD: %s                                                     |
| 0x0147           | Information | Controller cache discarded by user for VD: %s                                                             |
| 0x0148           | Information | Controller cache destaged for VD %s                                                                       |
| 0x0149           | Warning     | Consistency Check started on an inconsistent VD %s                                                        |
| 0x014a           | Warning     | Drive security key failure, cannot access secured configuration                                           |
| 0x014b           | Warning     | Drive security pass phrase from user is invalid                                                           |
| (Sheet 12 of 13) |             |                                                                                                           |

**Table A.2 Event Messages (Cont.)**

| <b>Number</b>    | <b>Type</b> | <b>Event Text</b>                                                                        |
|------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x014c           | Warning     | Detected error with the remote battery connector cable                                   |
| 0x014d           | Information | Power state change on PD %s from %s to %s                                                |
| 0x014e           | Information | Enclosure %s element (SES code 0x%x) status changed                                      |
| 0x014f           | Information | PD %s rebuild not possible as HDD/SSD mix is not supported in an array                   |
| 0x0150           | Information | Copyback cannot be started on PD %s from %s, as HDD/SSD mix is not supported in an array |
| (Sheet 13 of 13) |             |                                                                                          |

# Appendix B

## Glossary

---

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>access policy</b> | A virtual drive property indicating what kind of access is allowed for a particular virtual drive. The possible values are <i>Read/Write</i> , <i>Read Only</i> , or <i>Blocked</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>alarm enabled</b> | A controller property that indicates whether the controller's onboard alarm is enabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>alarm present</b> | A controller property that indicates whether the controller has an onboard alarm. If present and enabled, the alarm is sounded for certain error conditions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>array</b>         | See <i>drive group</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>BBU present</b>   | A controller property that indicates whether the controller has an onboard battery backup unit to provide power in case of a power failure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>BGI rate</b>      | A controller property indicating the rate at which the background initialization of virtual drives will be carried out.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>BIOS</b>          | Basic Input/Output System. The computer BIOS is stored on a flash memory chip. The BIOS controls communications between the microprocessor and peripheral devices, such as the keyboard and the video controller, and miscellaneous functions, such as system messages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>cache</b>         | Fast memory that holds recently accessed data. Use of cache memory speeds subsequent access to the same data. When data is read from or written to main memory, a copy is also saved in cache memory with the associated main memory address. The cache memory software monitors the addresses of subsequent reads to see if the required data is already stored in cache memory. If it is already in cache memory (a cache hit), it is read from cache memory immediately and the main memory read is aborted (or not started). If the data is not cached (a cache miss), it is fetched from main memory and saved in cache memory. |

|                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>cache flush interval</b>   | A controller property that indicates how often the data cache is flushed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>caching</b>                | The process of using a high speed memory buffer to speed up a computer system's overall read/write performance. The cache can be accessed at a higher speed than a drive subsystem. To improve read performance, the cache usually contains the most recently accessed data, as well as data from adjacent drive sectors. To improve write performance, the cache may temporarily store data in accordance with its write back policies. |
| <b>capacity</b>               | A property that indicates the amount of storage space on a drive or virtual drive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>coerced capacity</b>       | A drive property indicating the capacity to which a drive has been coerced (forced) to make it compatible with other drives that are nominally the same capacity. For example, a 4 Gbyte drive from one manufacturer may be 4,196 Mbytes, and a 4 Gbyte from another manufacturer may be 4,128 Mbytes. These drives could be coerced to a usable capacity of 4,088 Mbytes each for use in a drive group in a storage configuration.      |
| <b>coercion mode</b>          | A controller property indicating the capacity to which drives of nominally identical capacity are coerced (forced) to make them usable in a storage configuration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>consistency check</b>      | An operation that verifies that all stripes in a virtual drive with a redundant RAID level are consistent and that automatically fixes any errors. For RAID 1 drive groups, this operation verifies correct mirrored data for each stripe.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>consistency check rate</b> | The rate at which consistency check operations are run on a computer system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>controller</b>             | A chip that controls the transfer of data between the microprocessor and memory or between the microprocessor and a peripheral device such as a drive. RAID controllers perform RAID functions such as striping and mirroring to provide data protection. MegaRAID Storage Manager software runs on LSI SAS controllers.                                                                                                                 |
| <b>copyback</b>               | The procedure used to copy data from a source drive of a virtual drive to a destination drive that is not a part of the virtual drive. The copyback operation is often used to create or restore a specific physical                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

configuration for a drive group (for example, a specific arrangement of drive group members on the device I/O buses). The copyback operation can be run automatically or manually.

Typically, a drive fails or is expected to fail, and the data is rebuilt on a hot spare. The failed drive is replaced with a new drive. Then the data is copied from the hot spare to the new drive, and the hot spare reverts from a rebuild drive to its original hot spare status. The copyback operation runs as a background activity, and the virtual drive is still available online to the host.

**current write policy**

A virtual drive property that indicates whether the virtual drive currently supports Write Back mode or Write Through mode.

- In Write Back mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction.
- In Write Through mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction.

**default write policy**

A virtual drive property indicating whether the default write policy is Write Through or Write Back. In Write Back mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a transaction. In Write Through mode the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data in a transaction.

**device ID**

A controller or drive property indicating the manufacturer-assigned device ID.

**device port count**

A controller property indicating the number of ports on the controller.

**drive cache policy**

A virtual drive property indicating whether the virtual drive cache is enabled, disabled, or unchanged from its previous setting.

**drive group**

A group of drives attached to a RAID controller on which one or more virtual drives can be created. All virtual drives in the drive group use all of the drives in the drive group.

**drive state**

A drive property indicating the status of the drive. A drive can be in one of the following states:

- Unconfigured Good: A drive accessible to the RAID controller but not configured as a part of a virtual drive or as a hot spare.
- Hot Spare: A drive that is configured as a hot spare.
- Online: A drive that can be accessed by the RAID controller and will be part of the virtual drive.
- Rebuild: A drive to which data is being written to restore full redundancy for a virtual drive.
- Failed: A drive that was originally configured as Online or Hot Spare, but on which the firmware detects an unrecoverable error.
- Unconfigured Bad: A drive on which the firmware detects an unrecoverable error; the drive was Unconfigured Good or the drive could not be initialized.
- Missing: A drive that was Online, but which has been removed from its location.
- Offline: A drive that is part of a virtual drive but which has invalid data as far as the RAID configuration is concerned.
- None: A drive with an unsupported flag set. An Unconfigured Good or Offline drive that has completed the prepare for removal operation.

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>drive subsystem</b>     | A collection of drives and the hardware that controls them and connects them to one or more controllers. The hardware can include an intelligent controller, or the drives can attach directly to a system I/O bus controller.                                                                                                                   |
| <b>drive type</b>          | A drive property indicating the characteristics of the drive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>fast initialization</b> | A mode of initialization that quickly writes zeroes to the first and last sectors of the virtual drive. This allows you to immediately start writing data to the virtual drive while the initialization is running in the background.                                                                                                            |
| <b>fault tolerance</b>     | The capability of the drive subsystem to undergo a single drive failure per drive group without compromising data integrity and processing capability. LSI SAS RAID controllers provides fault tolerance through redundant drive groups in RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. They also support hot spare drives and the auto-rebuild feature. |
| <b>firmware</b>            | Software stored in read-only memory (ROM) or programmable ROM (PROM). Firmware is often responsible for the behavior of a system when it is first turned on. A typical example would be a monitor program                                                                                                                                        |

in a system that loads the full operating system from drive or from a network and then passes control to the operating system.

**foreign configuration**

A RAID configuration that already exists on a replacement set of drives that you install in a computer system. MegaRAID Storage Manager software allows you to import the existing configuration to the RAID controller, or you can clear the configuration so you can create a new one.

**formatting**

The process of writing a specific value to all data fields on a drive, to map out unreadable or bad sectors. Because most drives are formatted when manufactured, formatting is usually done only if a drive generates many media errors.

**hole**

In MegaRAID Storage Manager, a *hole* is a block of empty space in a drive group that can be used to define a virtual drive.

**host interface**

A controller property indicating the type of interface used by the computer host system: for example, *PCIX*.

**host port count**

A controller property indicating the number of host data ports currently in use.

**host system**

Any computer system on which the controller is installed. Mainframes, workstations, and standalone desktop systems can all be considered host systems.

**hot spare**

A standby drive that can automatically replace a failed drive in a virtual drive and prevent data from being lost. A hot spare can be dedicated to a single redundant drive group or it can be part of the global hot spare pool for all drive groups controlled by the controller.

When a drive fails, MegaRAID Storage Manager software automatically uses a hot spare to replace it and then rebuilds the data from the failed drive to the hot spare. Hot spares can be used in RAID 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60 storage configurations.

**initialization**

The process of writing zeros to the data fields of a virtual drive and, in fault-tolerant RAID levels, generating the corresponding parity to put the virtual drive in a Ready state. Initialization erases all previous data on the drives. Drive groups will work without initializing, but they can fail a consistency check because the parity fields have not been generated.

|                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>IO policy</b>                   | A virtual drive property indicating whether Cached I/O or Direct I/O is being used. In Cached I/O mode, all reads are buffered in cache memory. In Direct I/O mode, reads are not buffered in cache memory. Data is transferred to cache and the host concurrently. If the same data block is read again, it comes from cache memory. (The IO Policy applies to reads on a specific virtual drive. It does not affect the read ahead cache.)                                 |
| <b>learning cycle</b>              | A battery calibration operation performed by a RAID controller periodically to determine the condition of the battery.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>load-balancing</b>              | A method of spreading work between two or more computers, network links, CPUs, drives, or other resources. Load balancing is used to maximize resource use, throughput, or response time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>media error count</b>           | A drive property indicating the number of errors that have been detected on the drive media.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>migration</b>                   | The process of moving virtual drives and hot spare drives from one controller to another by disconnecting the drives from one controller and attaching them to another one. The firmware on the new controller will detect and retain the virtual drive information on the drives.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>mirroring</b>                   | The process of providing complete data redundancy with two drives by maintaining an exact copy of one drive's data on the second drive. If one drive fails, the contents of the other drive can be used to maintain the integrity of the system and to rebuild the failed drive.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>multipathing</b>                | The firmware provides support for detecting and using multiple paths from the RAID controllers to the SAS devices that are in enclosures. Devices connected to enclosures have multiple paths to them. With redundant paths to the same port of a device, if one path fails, another path can be used to communicate between the controller and the device. Using multiple paths with load balancing, instead of a single path, can increase reliability through redundancy. |
| <b>name</b>                        | A virtual drive property indicating the user-assigned name of the virtual drive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>non-redundant configuration</b> | A RAID 0 virtual drive with data striped across two or more drives but without drive mirroring or parity. This provides for high data throughput but offers no protection in case of a drive failure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |



|                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>NVRAM</b>            | Acronym for non-volatile random access memory. A storage system that does not lose the data stored on it when power is removed. NVRAM is used to store firmware and configuration data on the RAID controller.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>NVRAM present</b>    | A controller property indicating whether an NVRAM is present on the controller.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>NVRAM size</b>       | A controller property indicating the capacity of the controller's NVRAM.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>offline</b>          | A drive is offline when it is part of a virtual drive but its data is not accessible to the virtual drive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>patrol read</b>      | A process that checks the drives in a storage configuration for drive errors that could lead to drive failure and lost data. The patrol read operation can find and sometimes fix any potential problem with drives prior to host access. This enhances overall system performance because error recovery during a normal I/O operation may not be necessary.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>patrol read rate</b> | The user-defined rate at which patrol read operations are run on a computer system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>product info</b>     | A drive property indicating the vendor-assigned model number of the drive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>product name</b>     | A controller property indicating the manufacturing name of the controller.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>RAID</b>             | A group of multiple, independent drives that provide high performance by increasing the number of drives used for saving and accessing data. A RAID drive group improves input/output (I/O) performance and data availability. The group of drives appears to the host system as a single storage unit or as multiple virtual drives. Data throughput improves because several drives can be accessed simultaneously. RAID configurations also improve data storage availability and fault tolerance. Redundant RAID levels (RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60) provide data protection. |
| <b>RAID 0</b>           | Uses data striping on two or more drives to provide high data throughput, especially for large files in an environment that requires no data redundancy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>RAID 00</b>          | Uses data striping on two or more drives in a spanned drive group to provide high data throughput, especially for large files in an environment that requires no data redundancy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>RAID 1</b>       | Uses data mirroring on pairs of drives so that data written to one drive is simultaneously written to the other drive. RAID 1 works well for small databases or other small applications that require complete data redundancy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>RAID 5</b>       | Uses data striping and parity data across three or more drives (distributed parity) to provide high data throughput and data redundancy, especially for applications that require random access.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>RAID 6</b>       | Uses data striping and parity data across three or more drives (distributed parity) to provide high data throughput and data redundancy, especially for applications that require random access. RAID 6 can survive the failure of two drives.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>RAID 10</b>      | A combination of RAID 0 and RAID 1 that uses data striping across two mirrored drive groups. It provides high data throughput and complete data redundancy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>RAID 50</b>      | A combination of RAID 0 and RAID 5 that uses data striping across two drive groups with parity data. It provides high data throughput and complete data redundancy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>RAID 60</b>      | A combination of RAID 0 and RAID 6 that uses data striping across two drive groups with parity data. It provides high data throughput and complete data redundancy. RAID 60 can survive the failure of two drives in each RAID set in the spanned drive group.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>RAID level</b>   | A virtual drive property indicating the RAID level of the virtual drive. LSI SAS controllers support RAID levels 0, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>raw capacity</b> | A drive property indicating the actual full capacity of the drive before any coercion mode is applied to reduce the capacity.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>read policy</b>  | A controller attribute indicating the current Read Policy mode. In Always Read Ahead mode, the controller reads sequentially ahead of requested data and stores the additional data in cache memory, anticipating that the data will be needed soon. This speeds up reads for sequential data, but there is little improvement when accessing random data. In No Read Ahead mode, read ahead capability is disabled. In Adaptive Read Ahead mode, the controller begins using read ahead if the two most recent drive accesses occurred in sequential sectors. If the read requests are random, the controller reverts to No Read Ahead mode. |

|                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>rebuild</b>                 | The regeneration of all data to a replacement drive in a redundant virtual drive after a drive failure. A drive rebuild normally occurs without interrupting normal operations on the affected virtual drive, though some degradation of performance of the drive subsystem can occur.                                                                                      |
| <b>rebuild rate</b>            | The percentage of central processing unit (CPU) resources devoted to rebuilding data onto a new drive after a drive in a storage configuration has failed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>reclaim virtual drive</b>   | A method of undoing the configuration of a new virtual drive. If you highlight the virtual drive in the Configuration Wizard and click the <b>Reclaim</b> button, the individual drives are removed from the virtual drive configuration.                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>reconstruction rate</b>     | The user-defined rate at which a reconstruction operation is carried out.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>redundancy</b>              | A property of a storage configuration that prevents data from being lost when one drive fails in the configuration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>redundant configuration</b> | A virtual drive that has redundant data on drives in the drive group that can be used to rebuild a failed drive. The redundant data can be parity data striped across multiple drives in a drive group, or it can be a complete mirrored copy of the data stored on a second drive. A redundant configuration protects the data in case a drive fails in the configuration. |
| <b>revertible hot spare</b>    | When you use the Replace Member procedure, after data is copied from a hot spare to a new drive, the hot spare reverts from a rebuild drive to its original hot spare status.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>revision level</b>          | A drive property that indicates the revision level of the drive's firmware.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>SAS</b>                     | Acronym for Serial Attached SCSI. SAS is a serial, point-to-point, enterprise-level device interface that leverages the Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) protocol set. The SAS interface provides improved performance, simplified cabling, smaller connectors, lower pin count, and lower power requirements when compared to parallel SCSI.                         |
| <b>SATA</b>                    | Acronym for Serial Advanced Technology Attachment. A physical storage interface standard. SATA is a serial link that provides point-to-point connections between devices. The thinner serial cables allow for better airflow within the system and permit smaller chassis designs.                                                                                          |

|                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>SCSI device type</b>          | A drive property indicating the type of the device, such as drive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>serial no.</b>                | A controller property indicating the manufacturer-assigned serial number.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>strip size</b>                | The portion of a stripe that resides on a single drive in the drive group.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>stripe size</b>               | A virtual drive property indicating the length of the interleaved data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 64 KB of drive space and has 16 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 64 KB and the strip size is 16 KB. The user can select the stripe size.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>striping</b>                  | A technique used to write data across all drives in a virtual drive. Each stripe consists of consecutive virtual drive data addresses that are mapped in fixed-size units to each drive in the virtual drive using a sequential pattern. For example, if the virtual drive includes five drives, the stripe writes data to drives one through five without repeating any of the drives. The amount of space consumed by a stripe is the same on each drive. Striping by itself does not provide data redundancy. Striping in combination with parity does provide data redundancy. |
| <b>subvendor ID</b>              | A controller property that lists additional vendor ID information about the controller.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>uncorrectable error count</b> | A controller property that lists the number of uncorrectable errors detected on drives connected to the controller. If the error count reaches a certain level, a drive will be marked as failed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>vendor ID</b>                 | A controller property indicating the vendor-assigned ID number of the controller.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>vendor info</b>               | A drive property listing the name of the vendor of the drive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>virtual drive</b>             | A storage unit created by a RAID controller from one or more drives. Although a virtual drive may be created from several drives, it is seen by the operating system as a single drive. Depending on the RAID level used, the virtual drive may retain redundant data in case of a drive failure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>virtual drive state</b>       | A virtual drive property indicating the condition of the virtual drive. Examples include Optimal and Degraded.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

**write-back**

In Write-Back Caching mode, the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the controller cache has received all of the data in a drive write transaction. Data is written to the drive subsystem in accordance with policies set up by the controller. These policies include the amount of dirty/clean cache lines, the number of cache lines available, and elapsed time from the last cache flush.

**write policy**

See *Default Write Policy*.

**write-through**

In Write-Through Caching mode, the controller sends a data transfer completion signal to the host when the drive subsystem has received all of the data and has completed the write transaction to the drive.



# Customer Feedback

---

We would appreciate your feedback on this document. Please copy the following page, add your comments, and fax it to us at the number shown.

If appropriate, please also fax copies of any marked-up pages from this document.

Important: Please include your name, phone number, fax number, and company address so that we may contact you directly for clarification or additional information.

Thank you for your help in improving the quality of our documents.

---

## Reader's Comments

Fax your comments to: LSI Corporation  
Technical Publications  
M/S E-198  
Fax: 408.433.4333

Please tell us how you rate this document: *MegaRAID SAS Software User's Guide*. Place a check mark in the appropriate blank for each category.

|                                          | Excellent | Good | Average | Fair | Poor |
|------------------------------------------|-----------|------|---------|------|------|
| Completeness of information              | ___       | ___  | ___     | ___  | ___  |
| Clarity of information                   | ___       | ___  | ___     | ___  | ___  |
| Ease of finding information              | ___       | ___  | ___     | ___  | ___  |
| Technical content                        | ___       | ___  | ___     | ___  | ___  |
| Usefulness of examples and illustrations | ___       | ___  | ___     | ___  | ___  |
| Overall manual                           | ___       | ___  | ___     | ___  | ___  |

What could we do to improve this document?

---

---

---

---

If you found errors in this document, please specify the error and page number. If appropriate, please fax a marked-up copy of the page(s).

---

---

---

Please complete the information below so that we may contact you directly for clarification or additional information.

Name \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone \_\_\_\_\_ Fax \_\_\_\_\_  
Title \_\_\_\_\_  
Department \_\_\_\_\_ Mail Stop \_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name \_\_\_\_\_  
Street \_\_\_\_\_  
City, State, Zip \_\_\_\_\_

*Customer Feedback*

Copyright © 2005-2009 by LSI Corporation. All rights reserved.